

English for life!

Pre-Intermediate

Student's Book

Tom Hutchinson

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS



Contents

Lessons 1–4 ▶	1 Introductions and nationalities <i>Whereabouts?</i>
Getting started	
Lessons 5–8 ▶	5 Jobs: <i>a plumber, a studio, repair things, etc.</i> Word building 1: <i>I drive a lorry, I'm a lorry driver, etc.</i>
Work	
Lessons 9–12 ▶	9 Collocations: <i>do the ironing, make the bed, have breakfast, etc.</i> Pronunciation: Stress in expressions
Routines and lifestyle	
Lessons 13–16 ▶	13 Life events: <i>grow up, fall in love, get married, etc.</i> Years: <i>1969, 2005, etc.</i> English in the world: Going to university
Life stories	
Lessons 17–20 ▶	17 At the station: <i>the fare, a local train, first class, etc.</i> Pronunciation: Word stress 2
Travel and transport	
Lessons 21–24 ▶	21 Directions and locations: <i>along the street, over the bridge, at the top of the hill</i> Pronunciation: of short form
Locations and events	
Lessons 25–28 ▶	25 The world: <i>Asia, The Atlantic, Mount Everest, etc.</i> Articles with geographical names Pronunciation: Word stress 3
Seeing the world	
Lessons 29–32 ▶	29 Describing people: <i>tall, middle-aged, slim, etc.</i> Modifiers: <i>quite, not very, etc.</i> English in the world: Tactful language
Describing people and things	
Lessons 33–36 ▶	33 TV programmes: <i>a documentary, a sitcom, etc.</i> Word building 2: <i>a music programme</i> English in the world: TV channels
TV and the news	
Lessons 37–40 ▶	37 Health problems: <i>My arm itches, I've got a rash, etc.</i> Possessive adjectives
Health matters	
Lessons 41–44 ▶	41 Cooking: <i>a saucepan, roast, slice, etc.</i> Verbs and adjectives: <i>fried, boiled, etc.</i> English in the world: Eating
Food	
Lessons 45–48 ▶	45 Shops: <i>an estate agent's, a hardware shop, etc.</i> Word building 3: <i>a stationery shop</i> Pronunciation: Silent letters
Shopping	
Lessons 49–52 ▶	49 Money: <i>a cheque, a PIN number, etc.</i> <i>pay (for/by); lend/borrow</i> English in the world: Cash machines
Money	
Lessons 53–56 ▶	53 Activities: <i>scuba-diving, doing DIY, etc.</i> <i>-ing</i>
Holidays and free time	
Lessons 57–60 ▶	57 In the office: <i>a printer, a filing cabinet, etc.</i> Office activities: <i>send an email, have a break, etc.</i>
Working life	
Lessons 61–64 ▶	61 In the home: <i>a kettle, a clock radio, etc.</i> Subject/object questions
Home life	
Lessons 65–68 ▶	65 Materials: <i>plastic, wool, metal, etc.</i> Word building 4: <i>a leather belt, etc.</i> Pronunciation: Sentence stress
Describing things and events	
Lessons 69–72 ▶	69 Computers: <i>an icon, an attachment, etc.</i> English in the world: Website addresses
Computers	
Lessons 73–76 ▶	73 Phrasal verbs: <i>put on, break down, etc.</i>
Seeing old friends	
Lessons 77–80 ▶	77 Feelings: <i>relaxed, worried, tired, etc.</i> <i>-ed/-ing adjectives</i>
Feelings	

GRAMMAR

2 Question forms: <i>be, have got, do</i> Pronunciation: The phonemic alphabet
--

6 Present simple

10 Past simple statements <i>to be</i>
--

14 Past simple: questions and short answers
--

18 Present continuous Present continuous and present simple

22 Past continuous

26 <i>going to:</i> statements, questions, and short answers Experiences: <i>ever/never</i>

30 Adjectives and adverbs Verb + adjective: <i>be, look, taste, sound</i>

34 Present perfect: statements, questions, and short answers Experiences: <i>ever/never</i>

38 Present perfect and past simple

42 Quantity: <i>some, any, much, a few, etc.</i> Quantity expressions: <i>a slice of, etc.</i>
--

46 Comparatives and superlatives

50 Future with <i>will</i>

54 First conditional <i>when</i> Pronunciation: <i>won't</i> and <i>want</i>

58 Obligation: <i>must, have to, mustn't, don't have to</i> Pronunciation: <i>must/mustn't</i>
--

62 Advice: <i>should/shouldn't</i> English in the world: Warning signs
--

66 Passives

70 Relative clauses

74 Present perfect; <i>for</i> and <i>since</i> Pronunciation: Vowel sounds

78 <i>would:</i> second conditional
--



SKILLS

- 3 Listen and speak:** Registering at a language school
Giving your date of birth
English in the world: Saying email addresses
- 7 Read and speak:** My job
Adverbs of frequency
English in the world: 24/7
- 11 Listen and write:** A story
because and so
English in the world: Moving house
- 15 Read and speak:** A biography
Infinitive of purpose
- 19 Listen and speak:** In a taxi
want, like, need
English in the world: Transport signs
- 23 Read and write:** An unusual event
Past continuous and past simple: *when, while*
- 27 Listen and write:** A round-the-world race
Large numbers
English in the world: Races
- 31 Read and write:** A personality quiz
Expressing likes and dislikes: *love, don't mind, etc + ing*
- 35 Listen and write:** The news
Present perfect with present result
Pronunciation: The letter o
- 39 Read and write:** Advice for travellers
Giving advice
Pronunciation: Plural -es endings
- 43 Read and speak:** A diet
but and however
Pronunciation: The letter i
- 47 Listen and write:** Where do you normally shop?
not as ... as
- 51 Read and speak:** What will the future be like?
Expressing opinions 2: I think/don't think ...
Pronunciation: Sentence stress
- 55 Read and speak:** Holidays
Time clauses: *when, before, after, while*
- 59 Listen and speak:** Commuters
Time expressions: *an hour and a half, etc.*
English in the world: Rush hour
- 63 Listen and write:** I promise to love, honour, and wash up.
Expressing opinions 3
- 67 Listen and write:** Festivals
English in the world: Greetings cards
- 71 Read and write:** Love online
- 75 Listen and speak:** A university reunion
English in the world: Reunions
- 79 Read and speak:** Happiness
Time expressions: *at first, in the end, etc.*
Pronunciation: How many syllables?
- 4 Story:** That's Life! Episode 1 *Russell returns*
Asking about people
- 8 Making appointments:** Dates and times
Prepositions of time: *in, on, at*
Pronunciation: Word stress 1
- 12 Story:** That's Life! Episode 2 *Money problems*
Responding to information
- 16 Responding to news**
Pronunciation: Intonation
- 20 Story:** That's Life! Episode 3 *The woman with a camera*
Offering and asking for help
- 24 Giving directions:** *traffic lights, a roundabout, a junction, etc.*
English in the world: Speed limits
- 28 Story:** That's Life! Episode 4 *I've got some news!*
Expressing doubt
- 32 At the shops:** prices and descriptions
one/ones
Pronunciation: Sentence stress
- 36 Story:** That's Life! Episode 5 *Jordan's party*
Expressing opinions 1
- 40 At the doctor's**
English in the world: Health services
- 44 Story:** That's Life! Episode 6 *I don't believe it!*
Expressing annoyance
- 48 In a clothes shop:** *Can I try this shirt on, please?*
too/enough
English in the world: Bargains
- 52 Story:** That's Life! Episode 7 *Decision time*
Talking about money problems
- 56 Booking a hotel room**
English in the world: Hotel signs
- 60 Story:** That's Life! Episode 8 *The email*
Greeting a visitor
- 64 Describing faults:** *It's damaged, etc.*
Dealing with faults
Pronunciation: Negative auxiliary verbs
- 68 Story:** That's Life! Episode 9 *We must stop her!*
Responding to information
- 72 Asking what things are called**
Definitions
Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/
- 76 Story:** That's Life! Episode 10 *It's too late!*
Telephoning
- 80 A thank-you note**
Saying thank you
English in the world: Parties

1

VOCABULARY

Introductions and nationalities

- 1a 1.1 Read and listen. Where are Michael and Zofia from?



Michael Hi. My name's Michael.

Zofia Pleased to meet you, Michael. I'm Zofia.

Michael Sorry. What's your name again?

Zofia It's Zofia - Z-O-F-I-A.

Michael Oh, OK. Nice to meet you, Zofia.

Zofia Where are you from, Michael?

Michael I'm from Canada. And you?

Zofia I'm from Poland.

Michael Oh, really? Whereabouts?

Zofia Krakow. Do you know it?

Michael Yes, I do. I was there last year with my wife.

- b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.

Language box: Whereabouts?

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| A Where are you from? | A Where is she from? |
| B I'm from Italy. | B She's from New York. |
| A Whereabouts? | A Whereabouts? |
| B (I'm from) Rome. | B (She's from) Brooklyn. |

Whereabouts? means 'Where exactly?'.

- 2 1.2 Listen. Michael introduces a woman to Zofia. Choose the correct answers.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1 She's
a his boss.
b his wife.
c his girlfriend. | 2 Her name is
a Mia.
b Soshi.
c Olivia. | 3 She's
a Polish.
b Canadian.
c Chinese. |
|--|--|---|
- 3 **You do** Greet some people in your class. Use the conversation in exercise 1.

- 4a Write the countries.

Country

Poland

Canada

Nationality

Polish

Canadian

Chinese

Brazilian

Irish

Greek

Russian

American

French

Egyptian

Japanese

Spanish

- b 1.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 5 1.4 Drill. Listen. Say the nationalities.

- 1 Hello. I'm Felipe. I'm from Brazil.
His name's Felipe. He's Brazilian.



1 Felipe



2 Effie



3 Akira



4 Kate



5 Ahmed



6 Olga

- 6 **You do** Work in a group of three.

Introduce each other. Follow the pattern.

- A Hi, Niran. This is my friend, Judit.
B Pleased to meet you. Sorry. What's your name again?
C It's Judit. Nice to meet you, too.
A Niran's from Thailand.
C Oh, really?
B What about you, Judit? Where are you from?
C I'm from Hungary.
B Oh, that's interesting.

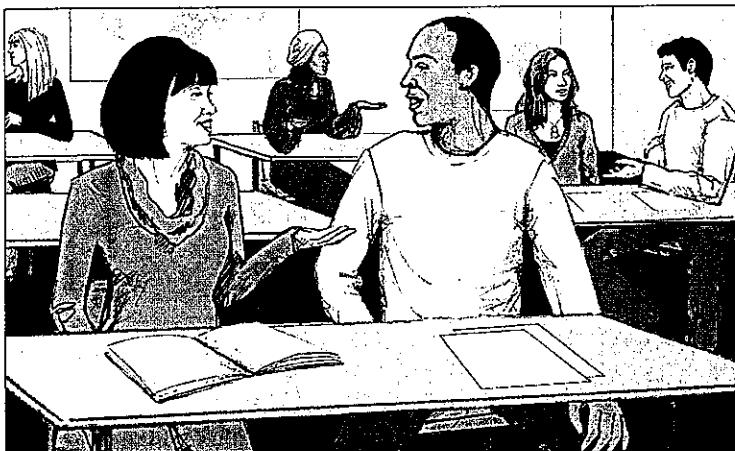
Now I can ... introduce people and name some nationalities.

2

GRAMMAR

1a Complete the questions. Choose the correct words.

Who are you?



Name _____ Answer _____

- 1 Where **am/is/are** you from?
- 2 What '**m/s/re** your last name?
- 3 **Am/Are/Is** you married?
- 4 When **have/is/are** your birthday?
- 5 Where **are/was/were** you born?
- 6 **Have/Has/Do** you got any brothers and sisters?
- 7 **Has/Have/Do** you got a car?
- 8 **Are/Do/Does** you live near here?
- 9 What **are/do/does** you do?
- 10 What **do/are/have** you do in your free time?

b 2.1 Listen and check.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 103.

Question forms: be, have/got, do

Are you from France?

Where are you from?

Have you got any children?

How many children have you got?

Do you live in Paris?

Where do you live?

3 2.2 Drill. Listen. Say the question.

1 You're a student.

Are you a student?

2 You've got two children.

Have you got two children?

4 Ask a partner the questions in exercise 1.

1 Write down his/her answers.

A Where are you from?

B I'm from ...

5a Change the questions to *he/she*.

Write them down.

1 Where are you from?

→ Where is he/she from?

b Work with a new partner. Ask and answer about your first partners.

6 Writing Write a paragraph about yourself. Change the words in bold.

My name's Maria and I'm from Italy.

I'm married and my last name is Valerio.

I was born in Naples and my birthday is on 14 August. I've got two brothers and one sister. I live outside Naples now with my husband and two children. I'm a secretary and I work in an office. At weekends, I go cycling with my family.

Pronunciation

The phonemic alphabet

1 2.3 We use a phonemic alphabet to show pronunciation (see page 124).

/sʌn/ /sʌn/ different letter, same sound: sun son

/kəm/ /həʊm/ same letter, different sound: come home

2a Choose the correct word to match the phonemic transcription.

1 /lʊk/ like look

2 /nəʊ/ know now

3 /wi:k/ week work

4 /mæn/ man men

5 /jɔ:/ you your

6 /eɪt/ eat eight

b 2.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

Now I can ...

ask about and give personal information.

3

SKILLS

- 1 **3.1 Listen.** Meryem is registering at a language school. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 She's *Turkish / Egyptian*.
- 2 She's a *doctor / chemist*.
- 3 She's *single / married*.
- 4 She *has / hasn't got* children.
- 5 Her address is in *Brighton / London*.
- 6 She gives a *mobile / daytime* phone number.



- 2a Use your answers to exercise 1. Complete those parts of the form.

Global Language School

Personal details

Title:

First name(s):

Surname:

Nationality:

Occupation:

Marital status: Single
 Married
 Separated
 Divorced
 Widowed

Gender: Female Male

Date of birth:

No. of dependants:

Contact details

Address

House number:

Street:

Town/City:

Postcode:

Telephone/email

Tel. no: (daytime)

(evening)

Mobile:

Email:

- 3 Match the 'official' terms with the questions.

- 1 Surname f
- 2 Age
- 3 Nationality
- 4 Date of birth
- 5 Marital status
- 6 No. of dependants
- 7 Address
- 8 Occupation

- a How old are you?
- b Where do you live?
- c When were you born?
- d What do you do?
- e Are you married?
- f What's your last name?
- g Have you got any children?
- h Where are you from?

Language note

Giving your date of birth

16 March 1985

We write: 16.03.85

We say: sixteen (oh) three eighty-five

OR

the sixteenth of the third eighty-five

- 4 Speaking Use the form in exercise 2 and the questions in exercise 3. Interview your partner.

English in the world

Saying email addresses

- 1 Say the email addresses below.

meryem.yilmaz@abc.com

meryem dot yilmaz at a b c dot com

a_person@anywhere.co.uk

a underscore person at anywhere dot co dot uk

z-antonio@abbi.pt

z hyphen antonio at abbi dot pt

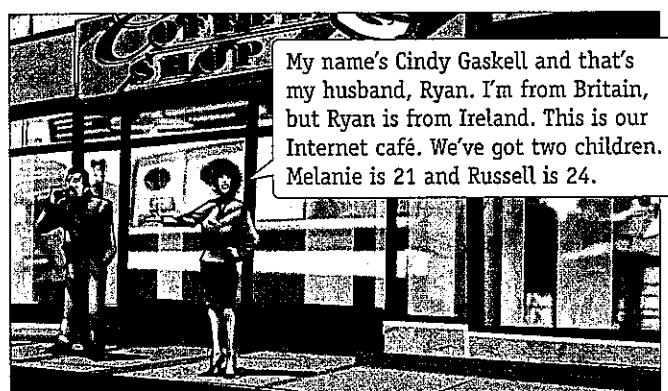
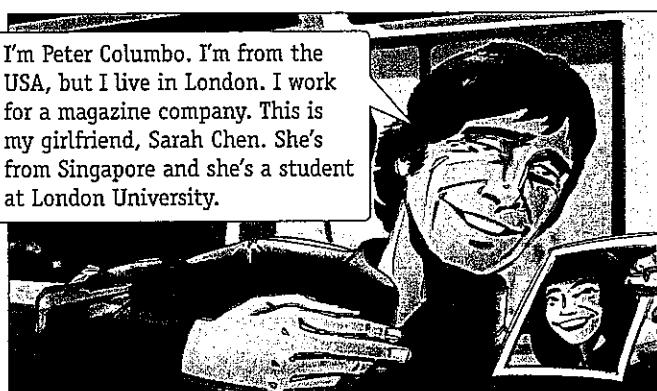
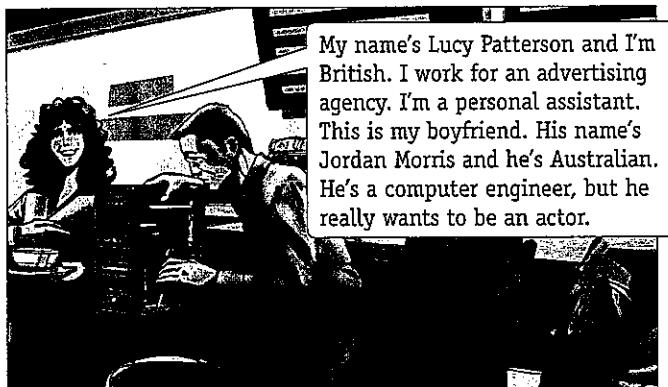
- 2 How do you say email addresses in your language?

- b Listen again. Complete the rest of the form.

4

THAT'S LIFE! Episode 1

1 4.1 Read and listen.



2 Read the texts. Copy and complete the table.

	Name	Nationality	Job
1	Lucy Patterson	British	personal assistant
2			

3 Complete the sentences with the correct names.

- 1 _____ is Ryan and Cindy's son.
- 2 _____ is Jordan's girlfriend.
- 3 _____ is Ryan's wife.
- 4 _____ is Sarah's boyfriend.
- 5 _____ is Russell's sister.
- 6 _____ are Melanie's parents.

4 4.2 Read and listen to the story. Answer the questions.

- 1 Why is Peter busy?
- 2 Where is Sarah?
- 3 Who is at university in Manchester?
- 4 Where is Russell at the moment?



Cindy Morning, Peter. How are you?

Peter Fine, thanks, Cindy. And you?

Cindy Yes, OK. Are you busy?

Peter Yes, I am. We're moving to our new offices this week.

Cindy How's Sarah? Is she away at the moment?

Peter Yes, she's in Manchester.

Cindy Really? Our daughter, Melanie, is at university there.

Peter How's your son these days?

Cindy Russell? I don't know. He's travelling round the world. He was in Mexico last month.



5 Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions Asking about people

- How _____ you?
Are _____ busy?
How _____ Sarah?
Is she _____ at the moment?

6 Work in a group. Practise the story in exercise 4.

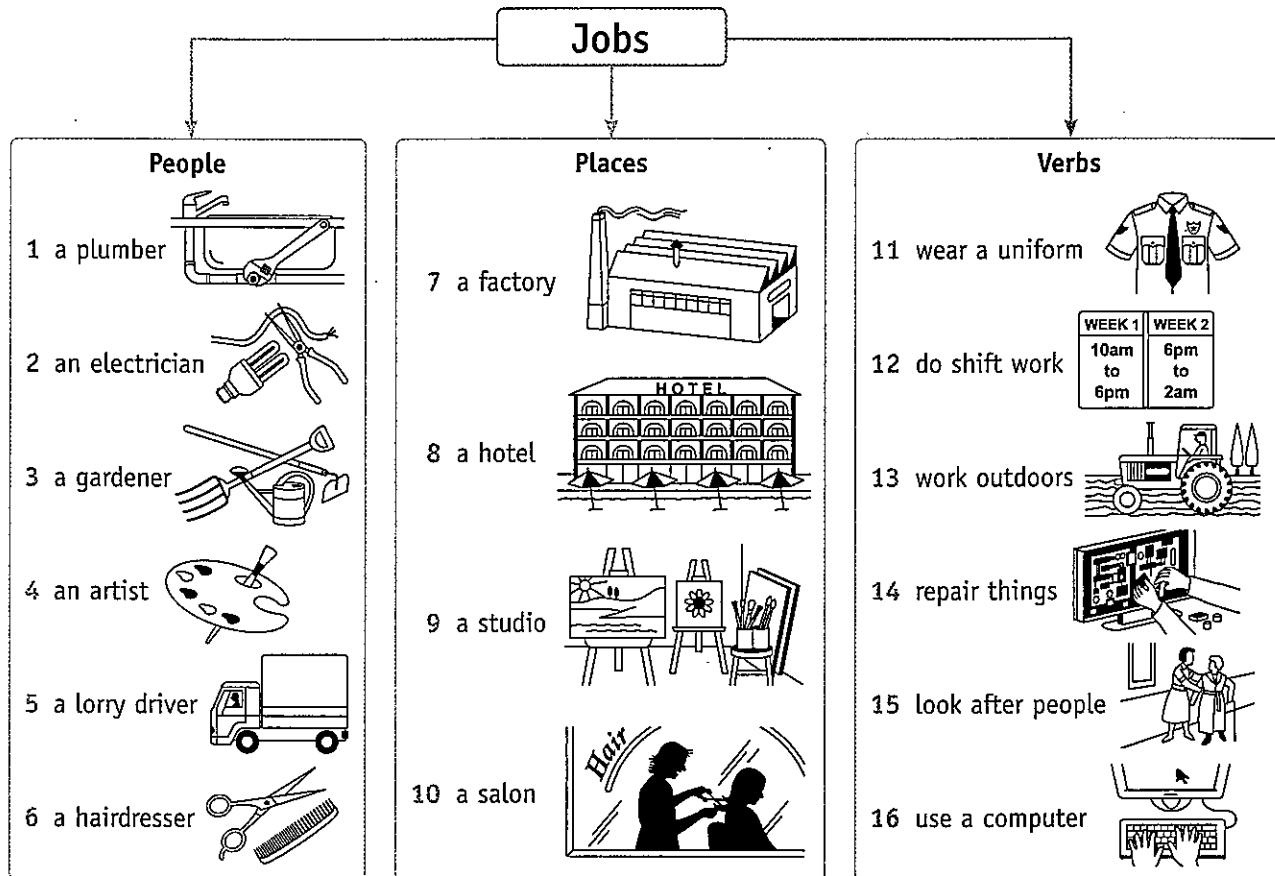
Now I can... ask how people are and where they're going

5

VOCABULARY

Jobs

1 5.1 Listen and repeat.



2 Add two people, places, and verbs to the diagram.

Word building 1

- I drive a lorry. → I'm a lorry driver.
I clean windows. → I'm a window cleaner.

3 Give two examples of people who do the things in the VERBS section of the diagram.

wear a uniform: police officers, flight attendants

4 Write three sentences about each person below.



- He/She's a ...
- He/She works (in a) ...
- He/She does/uses, etc. ...

5 Work with a partner.

A Think of a job.

B Ask questions.

A Answer: Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.

B Try to guess the job.

A Do you wear a uniform?

B No, I don't.

A Do you work in a ... ?

B Yes, I do.

A Are you a ... ?

6 Writing Write eight sentences about your job/studies and your friends/family.

1 I'm an electrician. I work in a hospital.
I repair ...

2 My sister is an artist. She works in a studio in the city. She draws ...

6

GRAMMAR

1 6.1 Read and listen. Who is Russell talking about?



Russell Hi, Dad. Can I ... Mmm, she's nice. Does she come here every day?

Ryan Lucy? Yes, she does. She usually comes in when she finishes work.

Russell Does she work near here?

Ryan No, she doesn't, but she lives near here – in Brent Street.

Russell Oh, right. What does she do?

Ryan She works for an advertising company. Do you like her?

Russell Yes, I do. I think she's gorgeous.

Ryan Well, she doesn't need a boyfriend, I'm afraid. She's already got one. It's Jordan.

Russell Oh!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 103.

Present simple

We use the present simple for:

permanent states She lives near here.

regular activities She comes here every day.

I live in Brent Street.

She lives in Brent Street.

I don't work near here.

She doesn't work near here.

Do you come here every day?

Does she come here every day?

Yes, I do.

Yes, she does.

No, I don't.

No, she doesn't.

Where do you work?

Where does she work?

3 Describe Jordan's life.

1 He lives in Park Road.

1 I live in Park Road.

2 I work for a computer company.

3 I repair computers.

4 I drive a van.

5 I start work at nine o'clock.

6 I finish work at 5.30.

7 I often go to The Coffee Shop.

8 I meet my friends there.

4 6.2 Drill. Listen. Say the negative.

1 I live near the station.

I don't live near the station.

2 He finishes work at six.

He doesn't finish work at six.

5 Ellen is talking about her life. Complete the text with the verbs in brackets.

I ¹work (work) in an old people's home and I normally ²work (work) at night. My husband, Dave, ³work (work) in an office. He ⁴not work (not work) at night. I ⁵finish (finish) work at 7 a.m. and I ⁶get (get) home at 7.15. I ⁷not take (not take) the children to school. Dave ⁸take (take) them and I ⁹go (go) to bed. Dave ¹⁰finish (finish) work at 5.30. We ¹¹have (have) a meal together. At 10.30, I ¹²drive (drive) to work. Dave normally ¹³watch (watch) TV for an hour and then he ¹⁴go (go) to bed.

6a Speaking Make questions for Ellen. Use the cues.

1 Where /you /work?

2 you /work /at night?

3 What /your husband /do?

4 he /work /at night, too?

5 What time /you /finish work?

6 What /you /do /during the day?

7 What time /Dave /finish work?

8 What /you /do /in the evening?

b Work with a partner. Ask the questions and give Ellen's answers.

7 Your life Write a paragraph about your daily life. Use some of the verbs below.

work get up have leave drive

start finish go watch

Now I can ...

talk and ask about people's working lives.

1 7.1 Read and listen to the text. What does Arne do? Does he like his job?



Arne Henriksen lives in a village near Stavanger in Norway. He's an electrical engineer and he works on an oil rig in the North Sea.

Arne lives on the rig for two weeks and then he has two weeks off. For the first week, he's on the day shift from 7 a.m. to 7 p.m. In the second week, he changes to the night shift.

When he isn't on duty, he always sleeps a lot. He usually goes to the gym, too, and he sometimes plays table tennis. There's a cinema on the

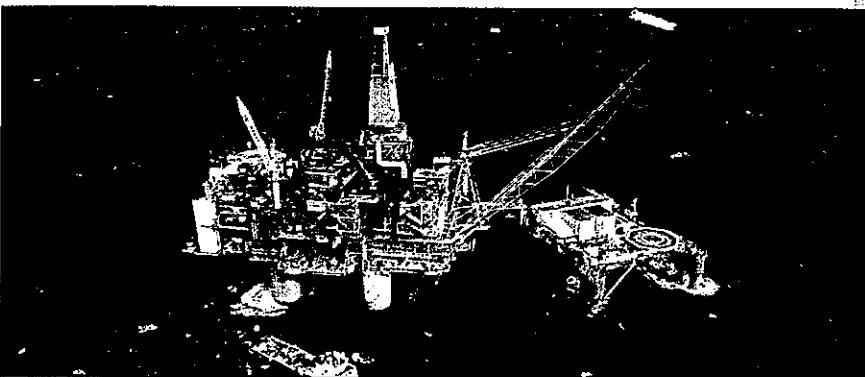
rig, so Arne normally watches five or six films a week.

About 480 people work on the rig. It's like a small village with all sorts of workers – cleaners, engineers, plumbers, electricians, chefs, secretaries, computer engineers, nurses, painters, and so on.

After two weeks, Arne leaves the rig and goes home. 'We have a small farm, so there are always things to do,' he says. He doesn't usually work all the time when he's at home. He

likes fishing, and in the winter he often goes skiing.

Arne likes his job. The money is very good and he enjoys the time at home, but there are problems. 'The weather's often bad in the North Sea, so the rig moves a lot,' he says. 'I rarely get seasick, but it isn't very nice when I do. The biggest problem is the shift work. When I change from the day shift to the night shift, I can never sleep. I watch a lot of films then!' ●



2 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 He lives in Norway.
- 2 He goes home every day.
- 3 He always works on the day shift.
- 4 A shift is twelve hours.
- 5 Over four hundred people work on the rig.
- 6 They're all engineers.
- 7 Arne works in a shop when he's at home.
- 8 He doesn't often get seasick in bad weather.

3 Find these things in the text.

- three things he does when he isn't on duty
- three other jobs that people do on the rig
- two things he does when he's at home
- two things that he likes about the job
- two problems with the job

Language note: Adverbs of frequency

0% ← → 100%
never rarely sometimes often usually/normally always

He sometimes plays table tennis.

There are always things to do.

He doesn't usually work all the time.

4 Make sentences with the adverbs of frequency about:

- 1 Arne's life
- 2 your own life.

5a Speaking Write six questions to ask Arne.

Where do you work?

Do you do shift work?

b Work with a partner. Interview Arne.

English in the world

24/7

Normal working hours in Britain are 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. However, a lot of people work outside these times because their workplaces are open 24/7 – twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week. For example:

- 1 hospitals, power stations, the police
- 2 bars and clubs
- 3 a lot of big supermarkets.

Compare this with your country.

Now I can ...

ask about and describe someone's job.

8

ENGLISH FOR EVERYDAY LIFE
Making appointments

1 Say these dates.

1 the first of May OR May the first

1 1 May 4 22 October

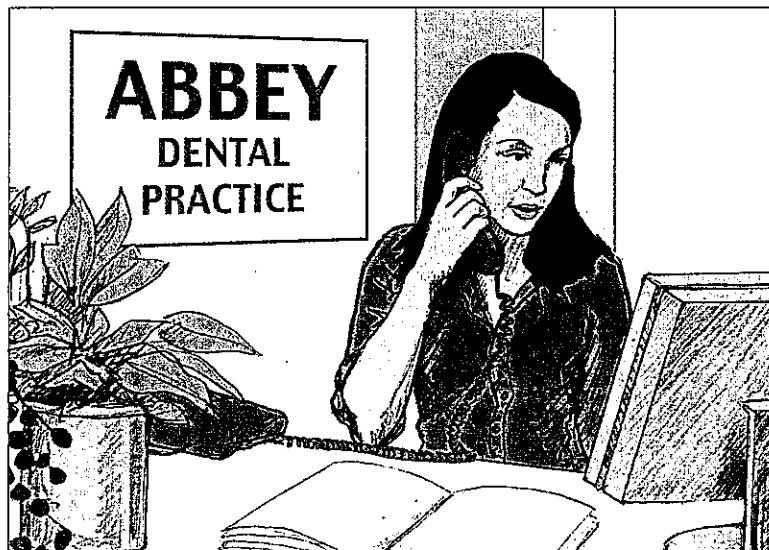
2 16 November 5 30 March

3 12 April 6 4 July

7 3 January

8 10 December

9 31 February

2a 8.1 Listen and complete the dialogue. Use *in*, *on*, *at*.**Receptionist** Hello, Abbey Dental Practice.**Caller** Hello. I've got an appointment ¹ ____ 1 June, but
I'm afraid I can't make that now.**Receptionist** I see. What time is your appointment?**Caller** It's ² ____ 12.45.**Receptionist** Ah, yes. Mrs Henderson?**Caller** Yes, that's right.**Receptionist** Would you like to make a new appointment?**Caller** Yes, please.**Receptionist** Can you come ³ ____ 16 June ⁴ ____ the morning?**Caller** What day is that?**Receptionist** It's a Tuesday.**Caller** Yes, that's fine. What time?**Receptionist** Well, can you come ⁵ ____ half past ten or ⁶ ____
quarter past eleven?**Caller** Oh, er, quarter past eleven, please.**Receptionist** Fine. So your new appointment is ⁷ ____ 11.15
⁸ ____ Tuesday 16 June.**Caller** Thank you very much. Goodbye.**Receptionist** Goodbye.

b Listen again and check.

c Work with a partner. Read the conversation.

3a Study the rules.

EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS
Making appointments

in	1969	January
the morning	winter	
on	6 August	Sunday
	Friday afternoon	
at	six o'clock	3.15
	the weekend	night

b 8.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

- 1 When's your interview? (Friday)
It's on Friday.

4 Complete the expressions.

EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS
Making appointments

What time ____ your appointment?
I'm afraid I ____ make that now.
Would you like to ____ an appointment?
Can you ____ on 16 June?
What day ____ that?

5a 8.3 Listen. Complete the table.

	1	2
Old appointment	Date	
	Time	
New appointment	Date	
	Time	

b Work with a partner. Use the table above. Make the conversations.

Pronunciation

Word stress 1

- 1 8.4 Listen. Underline the syllable with the stress.

Monday	evening
July	Wednesday
afternoon	April
November	receptionist
birthday	engineer
electrician	eleven
appointment	interview

2 Listen again and repeat.

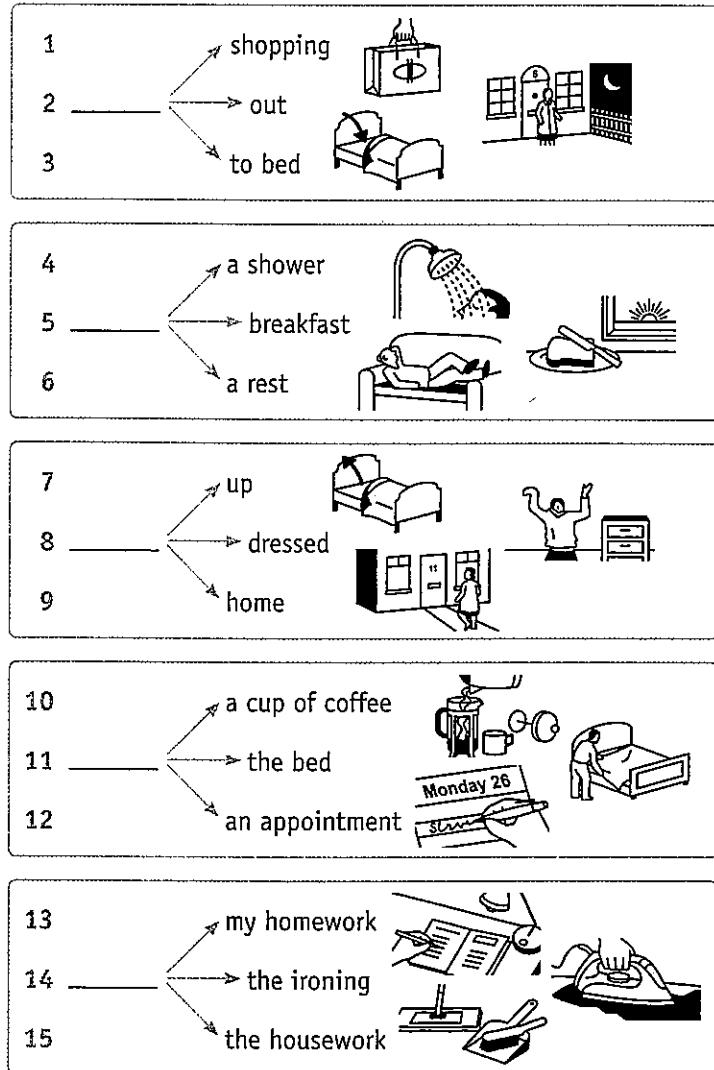
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now I can make appointments.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------

9

VOCABULARY
Collocations

1a Write the verbs in the correct spaces below.

have do get make go



b 9.1 Listen, check, and repeat.

2 9.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence with the correct verb.

1 a shower

I have a shower.

2 the housework

I do the housework.

3 Make three expressions with each verb.

watch: watch a football match, watch a DVD, ...

listen to:

read:

play:

4a Use suitable verbs. Complete what Arun says about his day.

I ¹get up at 7.30 and I ²_____ a shower. Then I ³_____ dressed and I ⁴_____ the bed. I ⁵_____ breakfast and I ⁶_____ the radio. Then I ⁷_____ to work. I ⁸_____ lunch at one o'clock. After work, I sometimes ⁹_____ shopping or I ¹⁰_____ tennis with some friends. When I ¹¹_____ home, I ¹²_____ dinner. I sometimes ¹³_____ some housework in the evening. I ¹⁴_____ the news on TV and then I ¹⁵_____ to bed. I ¹⁶_____ a book for a quarter of an hour before I ¹⁷_____ to sleep.

b 9.3 Listen and check.

5a Speaking Write six questions for your partner. Use the expressions from exercises 1–3.

Do you ... ?

When do you ... ?

Where do you ... ?

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Find two things that are the same.

6a Youself Choose two things that you:

- do every day
- never do
- normally do at the weekend
- like doing
- don't like doing.

b Write a sentence about each thing.

Pronunciation

Stress in expressions

1 9.4 In expressions, we don't normally put the stress on the verb. Read and listen.

go to bed have a shower

2 9.5 Listen and repeat.

get ready have breakfast go to work
make an appointment read a book
play the piano do the ironing

Now I can ... talk about everyday activities using collocations.

10 GRAMMAR

10.1 Read and listen.



Monday wasn't a good day for Lucy. Everything went wrong. She was in a hurry because she got up late. She didn't have breakfast. She just made a cup of coffee, but it was very hot and she dropped it.

She picked up her bag and her keys. Just then the post arrived. She put her keys on the table in the hall and opened the letters. There were two bills and a letter from the bank. She left the house, closed the door and hurried to her car. She stopped and looked in her bag. Her keys weren't there. And they weren't in her pocket. Then she remembered. They were on the table in the hall. And it wasn't just her car keys. Her house keys were there, too. It wasn't a good start to the week.

2a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 104.

Past simple: to be

She was in a hurry.

Monday wasn't a good day.

There were two bills.

Her keys weren't there.

b Underline more examples of the past simple of *to be* in the text.

3 Choose the correct form of the verb.

- 1 Lucy's neighbours had a key, but they wasn't/weren't in, because they was/were on holiday.
- 2 The weather wasn't/weren't very good. It was/were cloudy and it wasn't/weren't very warm.
- 3 She walked to the bus stop, but there was/were a long queue and the first two buses was/were full.
- 4 Lucy was/were late, so her boss wasn't/weren't very happy.
- 5 In the afternoon Lucy was/were tired. She had three meetings. They was/were very long and boring.

4a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 105.

Past simple

We use the past simple for completed events in the past.

1 regular verbs

open I opened the letters.

2 irregular verbs (see page 123)

get up You got up late.

3 negative statements

I had breakfast. I didn't have breakfast.

~~NOT I didn't had breakfast~~

b Underline more examples of past simple verbs in the text in exercise 1.

5 Correct the sentences about Lucy's day.

1 She didn't get up on time. She got up late.

2 She got up on time.

3 She had breakfast.

4 She drank a cup of coffee.

5 She picked up her laptop.

5 She put her keys down because the phone rang.

6 She got five bills in the post.

7 She left her keys in the kitchen.

6 10.2 Drill. Listen. Give the negative.

1 I got up late.

I didn't get up late.

7a Put the verbs in the past simple.

1 I was late for work. (be)

2 I take the bus. (take)

3 I lose my keys. (lose)

4 I be ill. (be)

5 I go to the cinema. (go)

6 I watch a DVD. (watch)

7 I eat a pizza. (eat)

8 I get a bill. (get)

b Your life Did these things happen to you yesterday? Tell a partner.

I was late for work. OR I wasn't late for work.

Now I can ...

talk about events in the past.

11 SKILLS

- 1 Look at the pictures of Vijay and Seema. What is happening in each picture?



- 4 How did the conversation change Vijay and Seema's life? Complete the table.

Their life before	Their life now
They lived in a big house.	They live in a small village.
	He doesn't earn much money.
	He sees his family a lot.
	He works at home.
	He doesn't travel much.
	They're happy now.

Language note: because and so

He was often away, because he travelled a lot. (reason)

He travelled a lot, so he was often away. (result)

- 5 Writing Complete the summary of Vijay and Seema's story.

At first, life was good for Vijay and Seema. Vijay had a good job. He earned ¹_____, so ²_____. However, they weren't happy, because ³_____. When they were on holiday, Vijay phoned ⁴_____, so ⁵_____. Vijay went for a walk on the beach and he met a man. The man made ⁶_____ and he was very happy. Vijay and Seema decided to change their life, so ⁷_____.

Now Seema ⁸_____. Vijay ⁹_____, but he isn't working today, because ¹⁰_____.

English in the world Moving house

Most people in Britain own their house or flat. They usually take out a **mortgage** to pay for it. When they move house, they sell their house and buy another one.

People normally buy and sell houses through an **estate agent**. A **solicitor** deals with the contracts and other legal matters.

- 2 11.1 Listen. Number the pictures in the correct order.

- 3 Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Why weren't Vijay and Seema happy?
- 2 Why did they have an argument?
- 3 Why did Vijay stop to talk to the man?
- 4 Why wasn't the man at work that day?
- 5 Where do Vijay and Seema live now?
- 6 What does Seema do?
- 7 What does Vijay do?
- 8 Why isn't he working today?

Now I can ...
understand and re-tell a story.

- 1 Look back at Episode 1 on page 4.
- 1 Where was Sarah last week?
2 Who came home?
- 2 **12.1** Read and listen to the story. Does Russell help his parents in the café?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
 - 1 Ryan is happy.
 - 2 Ryan and Cindy made a lot of money last month.
 - 3 The weather wasn't very good last month.
 - 4 The factory closed down a year ago.
 - 5 The workers don't go to the café any more.
 - 6 Russell arrived yesterday.
 - 7 He came home because he didn't have any money.
 - 8 Cindy's happy because Russell is at home.
 - 9 Russell always gets up at nine o'clock.
 - 10 Russell eats a lot.

4a Complete the expressions.

EXPLANATION EXPRESSIONS

Responding to information

Oh, I s_____.
That's t_____.
Yes, I h____ about that.
Oh, r_____.
Yes, I see what you m_____.

- b Practise the expressions together. Use the correct statements from exercise 3.
- A Ryan isn't happy.
- B Yes, that's true.
- 5 Language check. Underline examples of the past simple in the story.
- 6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Sarah Hello, Ryan. You don't look very happy.
Ryan No. Well, we didn't make much money in the café last month – again.
Sarah Oh, I see.
Ryan We didn't get many customers, because the weather was bad. And the factory on the corner closed recently, so the workers don't come now.
Sarah That's true.
Ryan And last Thursday our son Russell arrived home.
Sarah Yes, I heard about that.
Ryan He was in Mexico, but he didn't have any money, so he came back.
Sarah Oh, right.
Ryan Cindy's happy. Russell can't do anything wrong in her eyes.
Sarah But can't he help in the café? You could save some money.
Ryan Russell? He doesn't get up till midday. And he eats like a horse!



Russell Morning, Dad. Oh, hello.
Ryan Russell, this is Sarah.
Sarah Hi. Nice to meet you!
Ryan And, it's the afternoon, actually.
Russell Oh, OK. Can I have this coffee? And those cakes and sandwiches look good.

No, you don't save money when Russell's here. You lose it.



Yes, I see what you mean.

13

VOCABULARY Life events

1 13.1 Listen and repeat.



1 be born



2 grow up



3 move (house)



4 take an exam



5 graduate



6 get a job



7 lose a job



8 meet your future
husband/wife



9 go out with
someone



10 fall in love



11 get married



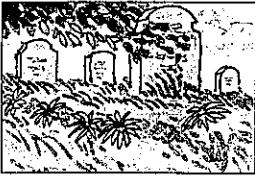
12 have children



13 get divorced



14 retire



15 die

2a Put the expressions in the table below.

general events	<i>be born, ...</i>
education	<i>take an exam, ...</i>
relationships	<i>meet your future husband/wife, ...</i>
work	<i>get a job, ...</i>

b Which verbs in the expressions have a regular past form?

3 13.2 Drill. Listen. Say what happened last year.

1 I / retire
I retired last year.

Years

We say:

1969 nineteen sixty-nine
2003 two thousand and three

2012 twenty twelve
1905 nineteen 'oh' five

4 13.3 Listen. Bernard is talking about his life. Complete the sentences.

- 1 His parents ____ in Chile.
- 2 Bernard ____ in Liverpool.
- 3 He ____ in London.
- 4 He ____ university in Birmingham.
- 5 He ____ his wife in Sydney.
- 6 He and his family ____ to South Africa.

5 Listen again. What does Bernard say about these numbers and dates?

1940s	1951	5
16	1969	1972
1980	35	2001

6a *Your life* Write six sentences about your life story.

b Tell a partner.

English in the world

Going to university

University courses in Britain and the USA usually last three or four years. Students don't always go to their local university. They can choose any university in the country, so a lot of students go to a different city.

First-year students normally live at the university in a hall of residence. In their second and third year, they often share a house or flat with other students.

Compare this with your country.



14 GRAMMAR

14.1 Read and listen.



Bob How did you meet your husband, Sue?

Sue Well, it started in Rome.

Bob Were you on holiday?

Sue Yes, I was. Anyway, I saw this guy.

Bob Was he on holiday, too?

Sue No, he wasn't. He was a tour guide there.

Bob Oh, I see. So did you go on a date?

Sue No, we didn't. We didn't speak much, but two years later I saw him again – at our local supermarket.

Bob Really! What did you do?

Sue I said, 'Were you a tour guide in Rome?' and he said, 'No.' It wasn't the same guy!

Bob Oops! Did you tell him about the tour guide?

Sue Yes, I did, and we laughed about it. Anyway, now we're married with three children.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 105.

Past simple: questions and short answers

1 The verb to be

Were you on holiday?

Yes, we were.

No, we weren't.

Was he a tour guide?

Yes, he was.

No, he wasn't.

How long were you there?

2 Regular and irregular verbs

Did you enjoy your holiday?

Yes, I did.

No, I didn't.

NOT Did you enjoyed your holiday?

What did he say?

14.2 Drill. Listen. Ask the questions.

1 We met in Paris.

Did you meet in Paris, too?

2 We were on holiday.

Were you on holiday, too?

4a Complete the questions and short answers. Use the words in brackets.

A ¹(you/away) Were you away last week?

B ²(Yes) Yes, I was. I was in Moscow.

A Oh? ³(you/there) on business?

B ⁴(No). I was at my brother's wedding.

A Really? ⁵(he/marry) a girl from Russia?

B ⁶(Yes). Her name's Hanja.

A ⁷(they/meet) in Moscow?

B ⁸(Yes).

A ⁹(your brother/on holiday) there?

B ¹⁰(No). He was a student at Moscow University.

A ¹¹(Hanja/a student) there, too?

B ¹²(Yes).

A ¹³(Why/he/go) to Moscow University?

B He studied Russian there.

A ¹⁴(you/visit) other places in Russia?

B ¹⁵(No), but I saw a lot of Moscow.

A ¹⁶(you/have) a good time?

B ¹⁷(Yes). I really enjoyed it.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.

5a Complete the questions. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Where were you born? (be)

2 _____ there? (grow up)

3 _____ house when you were a child? (move)

4 Where _____ to school? (go)

5 _____ a good student? (be)

6 What subjects _____? (like)

7 How old _____ when you left school? (be)

8 _____ to university? (go)

b Your life Use the questions in exercise

5a. Ask and answer with a partner. Try to find some more information.

1 Where were you born?

Were your parents born there, too?

How long did you live there?

Now I can ...

ask questions about events in the past.

15 SKILLS

15.1 Listen. Do you know these kinds of music?

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 classical music | 4 country music |
| 2 jazz | 5 soul |
| 3 blues | 6 gospel |

15.2 Read and listen to the text.

The Father of Soul Music



Ray Charles Robinson was born in 1930 in Georgia, USA, but he grew up in Florida. He lived with his mother, Aretha, and his younger brother. They were very poor. When Ray was five years old, his brother died and then two years later Ray went blind. Aretha Robinson sent her son to St Augustine's, a school for blind children. He studied classical music there.

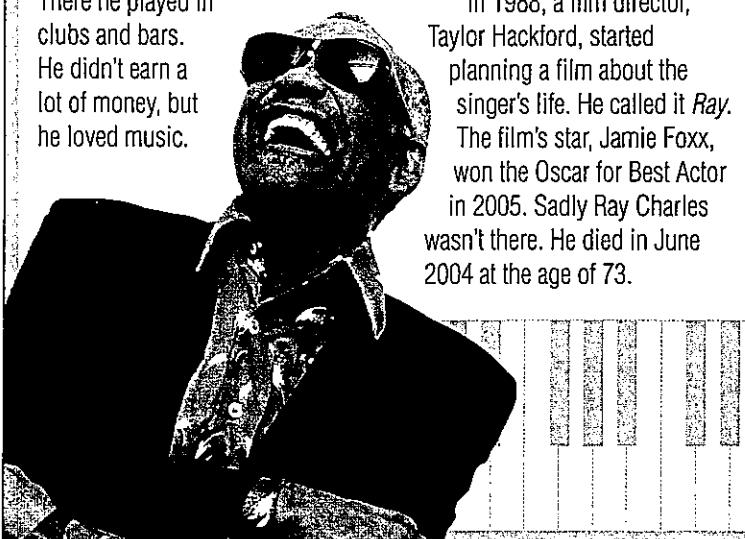
When Ray was fourteen, his mother died and he left school. For two years he played the piano with some local bands to earn the money for a bus ticket to Seattle. There he played in clubs and bars. He didn't earn a lot of money, but he loved music.

'Music,' he said, 'was like food or water for me.'

At first he sang songs by other famous singers, but he soon created a new kind of music. He used blues, jazz, country, and gospel music and he created 'soul music'. He changed his name to Ray Charles, and by 1955 the poor black boy from Florida was rich and famous.

He gave a lot of his money to schools for blind black children. His life also had a dark side. He took heroin for many years. He was married and divorced twice and had twelve children.

In 1988, a film director, Taylor Hackford, started planning a film about the singer's life. He called it *Ray*. The film's star, Jamie Foxx, won the Oscar for Best Actor in 2005. Sadly Ray Charles wasn't there. He died in June 2004 at the age of 73.



3 Match the names with the descriptions.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1 Jamie Foxx | — |
| 2 Taylor Hackford | — |
| 3 Ray Charles | — |
| 4 Aretha Robinson | — |

- a directed the film *Ray*.
- b was 'the father of soul music'.
- c was the star of the film *Ray*.
- d was Ray's mother.

4 Read the text again. Put these events in the correct order.

- He went to St Augustine's School.
- Jamie Foxx won an Oscar for Best Actor.
- He moved to Seattle.
- 1 His brother died.
- Taylor Hackford started a film about Ray.
- He went blind.
- He became rich and famous.
- Ray Charles died.
- His mother died.

5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Ray Charles born?
- 2 Where did he grow up?
- 3 What did he study?
- 4 How did he travel to Seattle?
- 5 How did he save money for the ticket?
- 6 What did he say about music?
- 7 How did he create 'soul music'?
- 8 Who did he give money to?
- 9 How many children did he have?
- 10 How many times was he married?

Language note: Infinitive or purpose

- He played the piano **to earn** money for a bus ticket.
- He went to St Augustine's **to study** music.

6 Speaking Work with a partner. Interview Taylor Hackford about Ray Charles' life. Use the questions in exercise 5.

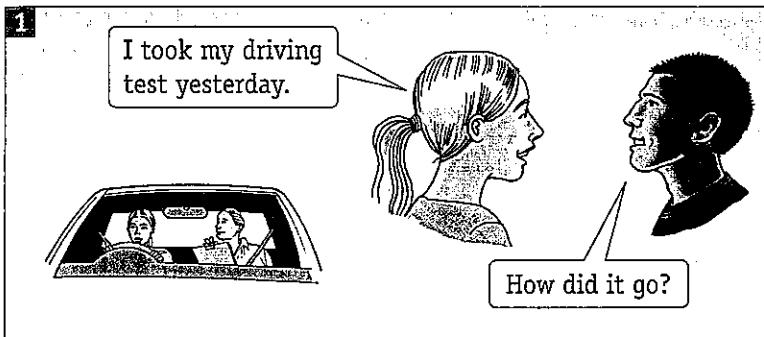
7 Your life Think about your favourite singers and/or bands. What do you know about them? Tell a partner.

Now I can ...
talk about a famous person's life story.

16

Responding to news

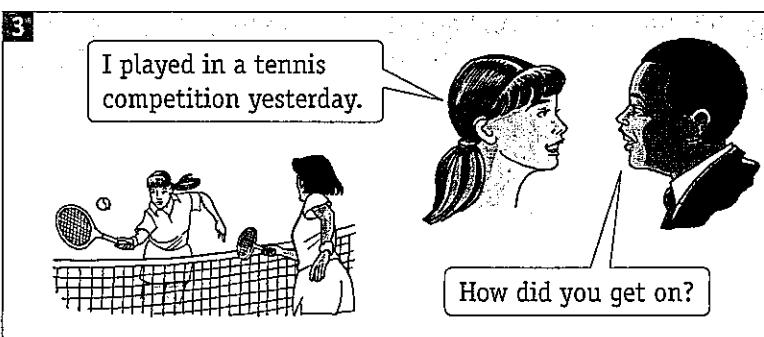
- 1a 16.1 Read and listen. Match the conversations with the correct endings.



- a I passed.
Well done! I knew you could do it.
- b I failed.
Never mind. Better luck next time.



- a It was OK, but I didn't get it.
Oh, dear. Never mind.
- b Great. I got it!
That's fantastic news!



- a I won.
Congratulations!
Well done!
- b I lost.
Oh, dear. That's a pity.

- b Work with a partner. Practise the conversations.

- 2 Complete the expressions.

Ask about news

How did it ____?

How did you ____ on?

How ____ it?

Responding to good news

Well done!

I ____ you could do it.

That's ____ news!

Congratulations!

Responding to bad news

Never mind.

Better ____ next time.

Oh, dear.

That's ____ pity.

- 3 Make new conversations for these situations.

- 1 You had an audition last week.
- 2 You played in a sports match yesterday.
- 3 You took an English exam two weeks ago.

- 4a Read the email.

Hi Mick
I heard that you failed your driving test. Never mind! Better luck next time.
All the best,
Trish

- b Write an email to 'Sam'. He passed his test.

- 5 Writing Look at situations 2 and 3 in exercise 1. Write emails to the people.

Pronunciation

Intonation

16.2 Listen and repeat.

- 1 Well done! (good news)
- 2 Never mind (bad news)
- 3 Congratulations!
- 4 That's fantastic news!
- 5 Better luck next time.
- 6 I knew you could do it.
- 7 Oh, dear. That's a pity.

17

VOCABULARY
At the station

1 17.1 Read and listen.



- A Hello. Can I help you?
- B Yes. How much is a ticket to London, please?
- A Single or return?
- B Return, please.
- A OK. Well, the fare in standard class is £24 and the first-class fare is £46.
- B And how much is a seat reservation?
- A Seat reservations are free.
- B And what time is the first train this afternoon, please?
- A There's a train at 12.32, but that's a local train so it stops at every station.
- B What time does it get to London?
- A It arrives at 2.20.
- B Is there a fast train?
- A Yes. There's an express at 1.15 and that arrives in London at two o'clock.
- B Oh, I think that's better.
- A But the express isn't direct. You change at Oxford.
- B Oh, OK. What platform does that train leave from?
- A It departs from platform 3.
- B Thank you very much.

2a Match the meanings with the words in bold in exercise 1.

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 a slow train | <i>a local train</i> | 7 the price of the ticket |
| 2 a fast train | | 8 a seat that is booked |
| 3 leaves from | | 9 non-stop |
| 4 arrive in | | 10 take two trains |
| 5 a one-way ticket | | 11 a cheap ticket |
| 6 a two-way ticket | | 12 an expensive ticket |

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

3a 17.2 Listen. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The passenger wants to travel to Manchester.
- 2 She wants a standard class ticket.
- 3 She's travelling today.
- 4 She buys a return ticket.
- 5 She doesn't ask for a seat reservation.
- 6 The fare is £52.
- 7 The next train is direct.
- 8 There's an express at 11.30.
- 9 It arrives at 12 o'clock.
- 10 It leaves from platform 4.

b Listen again and check.

4a Writing Use the information in exercise 1. Complete the email.

I've got the information about the train to London. The ¹ fare is £24 in standard class and £46 in ². Seat reservations are ³. The ⁴ train in the afternoon is at 12.32, but it's a ⁵ train. It gets to London at ⁶. There's an ⁷ at 1.15. It gets to London at two o'clock, but it isn't ⁸. You change at ⁹. It departs from ¹⁰.

Which fare and train do you want?

b Write an email with the information in exercise 3.

Pronunciation

Word stress 2

1 17.3 Listen and repeat.

• *single* • *return*

2a Put these words in the correct column

- above.

local standard express depart
ticket direct arrive platform

b 17.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

18 GRAMMAR

18.1 Read and listen.

Sarah is going to the university. She normally cycles, but she isn't cycling today because it's raining. At the moment, she's walking to the bus stop. Jordan is putting things in his van.



Sarah Hi, Jordan.

Jordan Oh, hi Sarah. Are you going to the university?

Sarah Yes, I am. I'm not taking my bike today, because I don't want to get wet.

Jordan Good idea.

Sarah What are you doing?

Jordan I'm delivering some computers. Nowhere near the university, I'm afraid, so I can't give you a lift.

Sarah Oh, that's OK. Bye.

Jordan Yes, see you. Don't get wet!



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 106.

Present continuous

I'm going to work.

He's taking the bus.

We're getting in the car.

Are you going to the university?

What are you doing?

Where is she going?

I'm not walking.

She isn't cycling.

They aren't stopping.

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

3a 18.2 Listen. Write two sentences. Use the cues.

1 She isn't cycling. She's walking.

1 she/cycle/walk

2 he/do a crossword/read a book

3 they/swim/jog

4 snow/rain

5 they/play golf/sunbathe

6 she/go to sleep/wake up

b Ask and answer about the sentences above.

A Is she cycling? B No, she isn't.

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 106.

Present continuous and present simple

We use the present continuous for what is happening now.

She isn't cycling today because it's raining.

We use the present simple for regular activities.

She usually cycles to the university.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1 I usually walk (walk) to work, but I'm not walking (not walk) today. I take (take) the bus, because my bag's heavy.

2 We travel (travel) to work by train every day. At the moment we stand (stand) on the platform. We wait (wait) for the 7.45 train, but it's late.

3 I usually go (go) to work at eight o'clock, but I leave (leave) home early today, because they repair (repair) the road at the moment.

4 Sandra usually get (get) to work at nine o'clock, but it's 9.15 now and she not sit (not sit) at her desk. She look for (look for) somewhere to park.

6 Your life Use the time expressions. Write six sentences about your life.

I always have a shower in the morning.

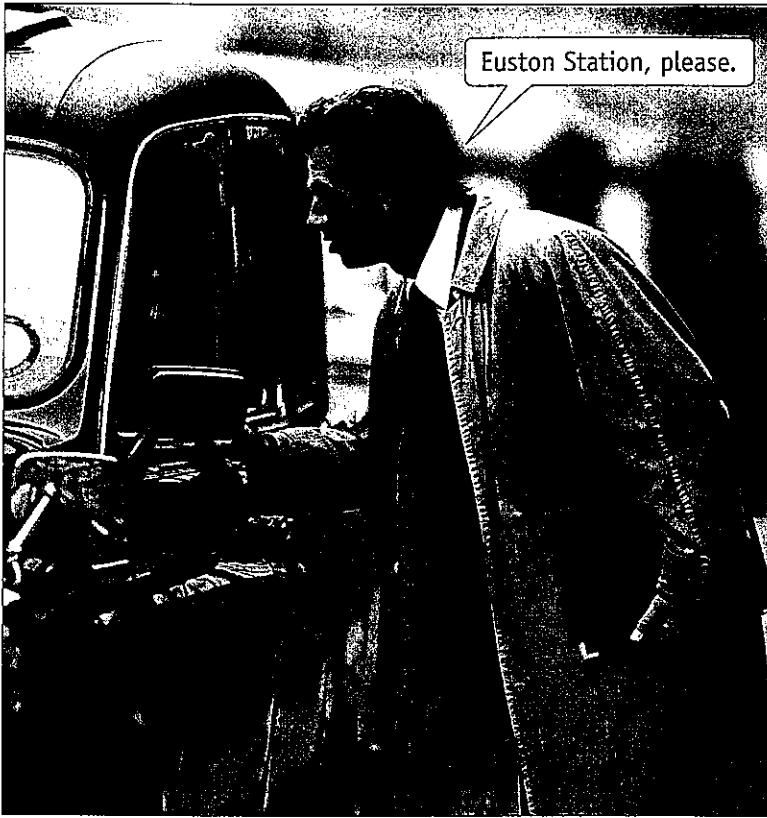
I'm not having a shower at the moment.

always every day usually
at the moment today now

Now I can ...

compare regular and current activities.

- 1 **19.1** Listen to three taxi conversations. Where is each passenger from?



- 2 Listen again. Complete the table.

Conversation	Destination	Fare
1	Euston Station	
2		
3		

- 3 Listen again. Which passenger is it? Write 1, 2, or 3.

- _____ is travelling on business.
- _____ gives the driver a tip.
- _____ wants a receipt.
- _____ likes the city.
- _____ is on holiday.
- _____ gets out of the taxi early.

Language note: want, like, need

We don't normally use the present continuous with *want*, *like*, and *need*.

What number do you want? NOT What number are you wanting?

Do you like it there? NOT Are you liking it there?

You need International Departures. NOT You're needing International Departures.

- 4 Tick ✓ the things the taxi driver talks about. What does he say about them?

- the traffic
- sport
- his girlfriend
- the airport
- his family
- his job
- the weather

- 5 Speaking Make conversations in a taxi. Follow the pattern.

A Taxi! Baker Street, please.
B OK.

Talk to the passenger. Choose one of the topics in exercise 4.

- B Here we are, Baker Street. What number do you want?
A Number 29, please.
B OK. Here we are – number 29.
A Thank you.
B That's £8.50, please.
A Could I have a receipt, please?
B Certainly. Here you are.
A Thank you very much. Goodbye.
B Bye.

English in the world

Transport signs

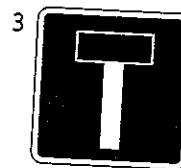
What are these signs in your language?



Roadworks



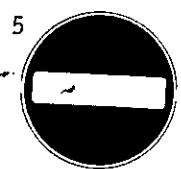
Crossroads



Dead end



Steep hill



No entry



Sharp bend

20

ENGLISH YOUR WAY!
That's Life! Episode 3

1 Look back at Episode 2. What does Ryan think about Russell?

2 **20.1** Read and listen to the story. Who is the woman with the camera?

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What are Ryan and Russell doing?
- 2 Is it Ryan's idea?
- 3 What is Russell looking at?
- 4 Is The Coffee Shop open?
- 5 What is the woman doing?
- 6 Why does the woman ask about the area?
- 7 Where are Russell and the woman going?
- 8 Why is Cindy annoyed?

4a Complete the expressions.

EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS

Offering and asking for help

Would you like ____ hand (with ...) ?

No, ____'s OK, thanks.

Can you ____ me a hand with (...) ?

Sure.

I can ... if you ____.

That's ____ kind. Thank you.

b Work with a partner. Make conversations with the cues below. Start like this:

Would you like ... ?

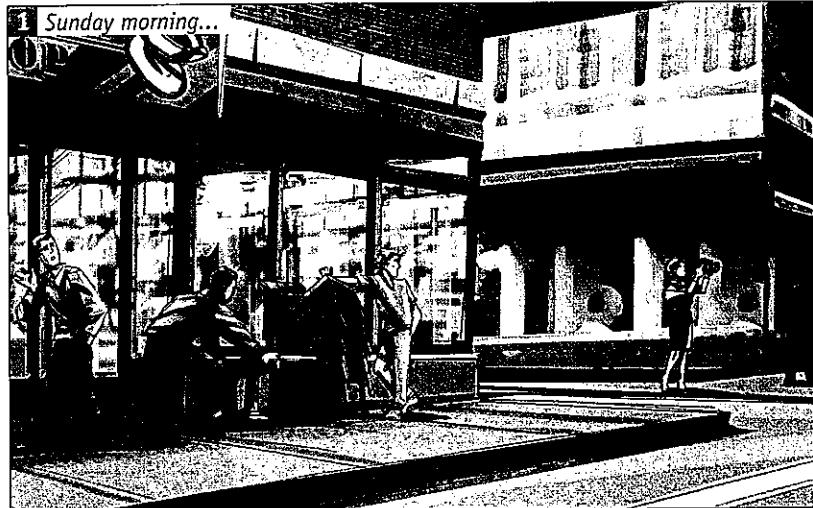
OR

Can you give ... ?

- the shopping
- these drinks
- the housework
- these bags
- the dinner

5 Language check. Underline examples of the present continuous in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



1 Sunday morning...

Ryan We're putting tables and chairs outside the café. It's Cindy's idea.

Jordan Would you like a hand?

Ryan No, it's OK, thanks. Russell's helping me.

Jordan Oh, OK. See you, then.

Ryan Yes, bye, Jordan. Come on, Russell. What are you looking at?

Russell I'm looking at that woman over there with the camera.

Ryan She's probably a tourist. Anyway, can you give me a hand with this table?

Russell Sure ... Oh, just a minute. She's crossing the road. Mmm. She's very nice.



2

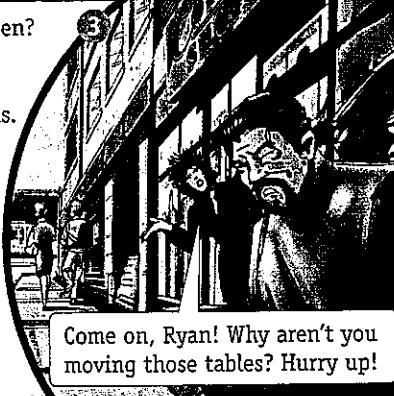
Ryan Yes, it is, but we aren't serving drinks outside at the moment.

Russell You're taking a lot of photographs. Are you a tourist?

Woman No, I'm not. I want to open a shop and I'm looking for a good area. What's this one like?

Russell Well, I'm not doing anything at the moment. I can show you around if you like.

Woman That's very kind. Thank you. I'm Anna, by the way.



Come on, Ryan! Why aren't you moving those tables? Hurry up!

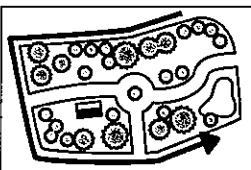
21

VOCABULARY Directions and locations

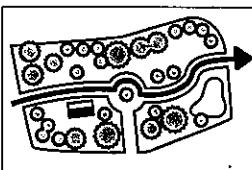
1 21.1 Listen and repeat.



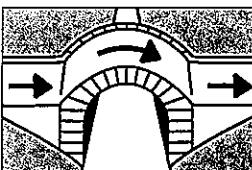
1 along the street



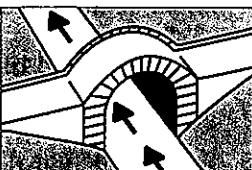
2 round the park



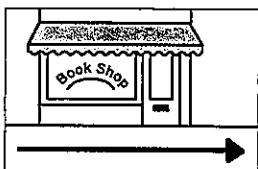
3 through the park



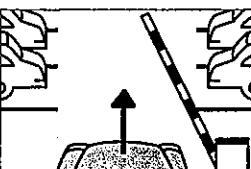
4 over the bridge



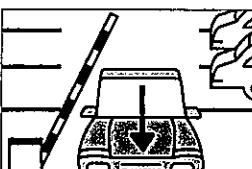
5 under the bridge



6 past the shop



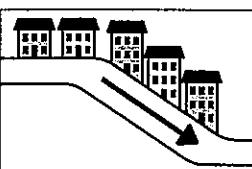
7 into the car park



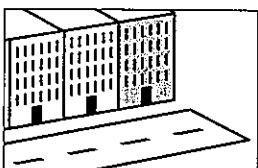
8 out of the car park



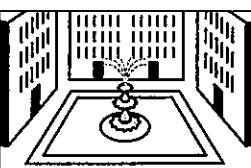
9 up the hill



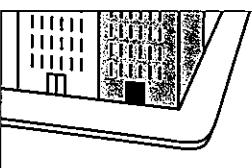
10 down the hill



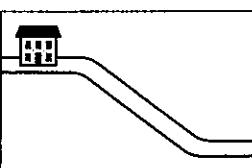
11 at the end of the road



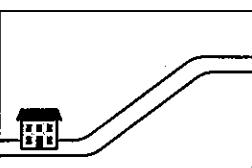
12 in the middle of the square



13 on the corner of the street



14 at the top of the hill



15 at the bottom of the hill

2 21.2 Drill. Listen. Give the opposite.

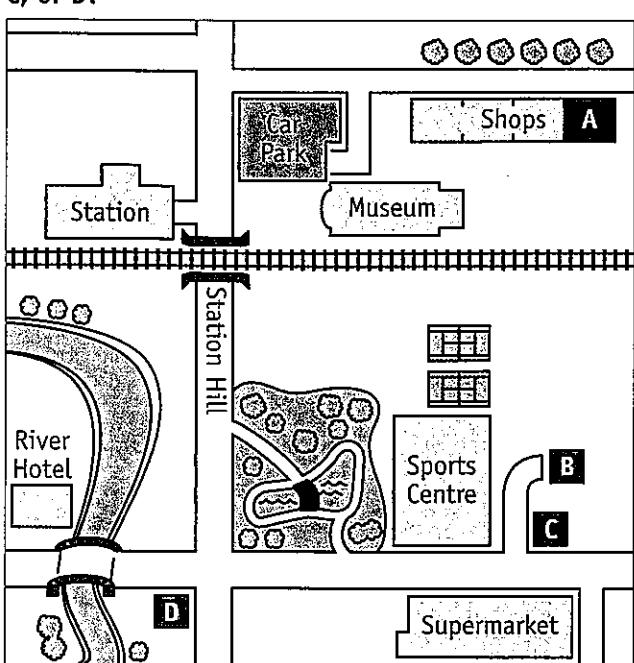
1 Go over the bridge.

No, go under the bridge.

2 Turn left.

No, turn right.

3 21.3 Listen. Which building is Magda's office? A, B, C, or D?



4 Speaking Ask for directions from the station to these places. Use the map in exercise 3.

- the park - the sports centre

- the River Hotel - the museum

A Excuse me. How do I get to the park, please?

B You turn right here, then you go under the bridge. After that, you

5 Your life! Describe your route to work or school.

I come out of my flat and I turn right. I go down the stairs. At the bottom of the stairs, I turn left ...

Pronunciation of short form

1 21.4 Listen. In expressions, we normally reduce *to* a schwa /ə/ sound.

• /əv/
It's in the middle of the town.

• /əv/
It's at the top of the hill.

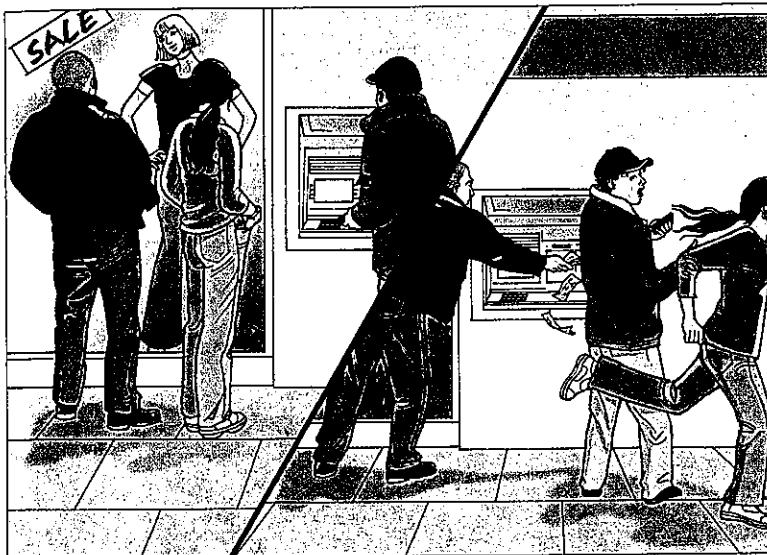
2 21.5 Listen and repeat. Copy the stress.

- 1 It's at the end of the road.
- 2 It's on the corner of the street.
- 3 It's at the bottom of the hill.
- 4 It's in the middle of the square.

22

GRAMMAR

1a 22.1 Read and listen.



Martin When I was going to the cash machine, I saw a man and a woman.

Policeman Were they watching you?

Martin No, they weren't. They were looking in a shop window.

Policeman What were they wearing?

Martin The woman was wearing a green sweatshirt.

Policeman Was she wearing jeans?

Martin Yes, she was. Anyway, while I was waiting for my money, the woman said 'Excuse me.'

Policeman What did you do?

Martin I looked round but she was running away. While I wasn't looking at the cash machine, the man took my money!

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 107.

Past continuous

We use the past continuous for an activity in progress in the past.

I was waiting for my money. I wasn't wearing a sweatshirt.

They were looking in a window. They weren't watching me.

Was she wearing jeans?

Yes, she was.

No, she wasn't.

Were they watching you?

Yes, they were.

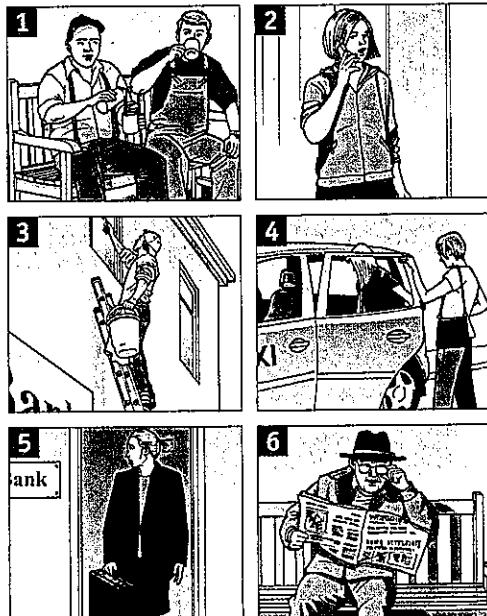
No, they weren't.

What was she wearing?

What were they doing?

3a What were these people doing when the robbery happened? Use the cues.

- 1 They weren't working. They were having a break.



1 work / have a break

2 talk on a mobile / eat a hamburger

3 shop / clean windows

4 get on a bus / get in a taxi

5 come out of the bank / wait for a bus

6 read a newspaper / buy a newspaper

b Ask and answer about the pictures.

A Were the men working?

B No, they weren't. They were having a break.

4a Your life What were you doing at these times?

1 I was lying in bed at seven o'clock this morning.

2 at seven o'clock this morning

3 at 9.30 last night

4 at 10.30 last Saturday morning

5 an hour ago

6 at 4.30 yesterday afternoon

7 at two o'clock last Sunday afternoon

b Ask and answer.

A What were you doing at seven o'clock this morning?

B I was lying in bed.



Now I can ... talk about activities in progress in the past.

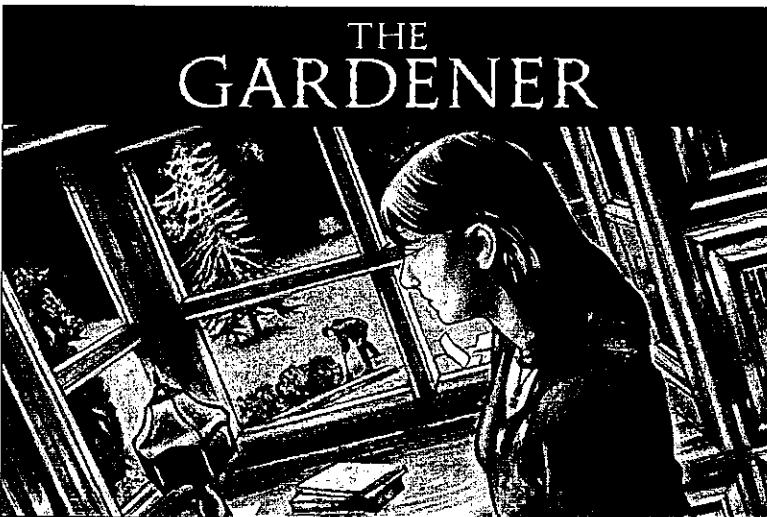
23

SKILLS

1a **23.1** Read and listen to the story. Who are these people?

- Beatrix - Fiona - Daniel - Michael

b Which of the people are in the pictures?



My name's Beatrix and I'm from the USA. Four years ago we were on holiday in Ireland. We were staying at a beautiful old hotel.

On the first afternoon, my husband and our two children were playing tennis, but I was having a rest in our room. I ordered some tea from the restaurant. While I was waiting for the tea, I looked out of the window. I saw an old man in the middle of the garden. He was wearing a jacket and a black hat and he was digging.

While I was watching the man, someone knocked at the door. I opened the door and Daniel, a young waiter, came in with my tea. I looked out of the window again but the old man wasn't there.

'The garden's beautiful,' I said.
'How many gardeners have you
got here?'

'Just one,' said Daniel, 'But she isn't here today.'

'She?' I said. 'But I was watching your gardener when you knocked at the door. He was an old man.'

'No,' he said. 'Our gardener's a young woman. Her name's Fiona.'

Later, we were going to the restaurant for dinner. We were walking along a corridor. There were some old photographs on the walls. When I saw one of the photographs, I stopped. It was the old man in the garden.

Just then Daniel came out of the restaurant. While he was walking past us, I pointed to the photograph and I said, 'That's the old man in the garden. He was wearing that jacket and hat.'

'That's impossible!' said Daniel.
'That's Michael. He was the
gardener here, but he died fifty
years ago!'



2a Read the text again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Beatrix from?
 - 2 Where is the hotel?
 - 3 Who was Beatrix on holiday with?
 - 4 Where was her husband that afternoon?
 - 5 Where was the old man?
 - 6 What was he doing?
 - 7 Why did Daniel go to the hotel room?
 - 8 What did they see later?

b Who says these things in the text? Why?
‘She?’
‘That’s impossible!’

Language note

Past continuous and past simple

While I was waiting, I saw a man.
I was waiting (past continuous)

I saw a man (past simple)

When I saw the photograph, I stopped.

I saw the photograph I stopped
(past simple) (past simple)

3 Put the verbs into the correct tense.

- 1 While Beatrix was having a rest, she decided to order some tea.
(have/decide)
 - 2 She ____ the tea and then she ____ the phone down. (order/put)
 - 3 While she ____ the tea, she ____ someone in the garden. (wait for/see)
 - 4 While she ____ the old man, Daniel ____ with the tea. (watch/arrive)
 - 5 While Beatrix and her family ____ to dinner, they ____ some old photographs. (go/see)
 - 6 When Beatrix ____ the photo of the old man, she _____. (see/stop)

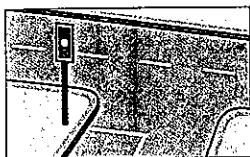
4 Writing Write a story about an unusual event. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where and when did it happen?
 - 2 What were you doing?
 - 3 What happened?
 - 4 What happened next?
 - 5 What was the result?

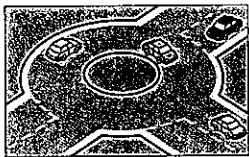
24

EVERYDAY LIFE Giving directions

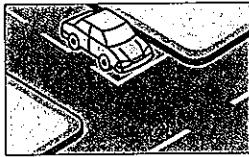
24.1 Listen and repeat.



1 traffic lights



2 a roundabout



3 a junction

2a Read the emails.

Hi
We need directions to your house. Can you tell me how to get there, please?
See you tomorrow!
Thanks
Leo

Hi Leo
Here are the directions to our house ...

When you leave the motorway, turn ¹right/left. Go ²up/along that road for about a kilometre. Look for a petrol station on the ³right/corner. At the next traffic lights turn ⁴right/left. There's a post office on the ⁵corner/left. Go ⁶up/down the hill. At the ⁷top/bottom of the hill there's a big roundabout. Go ⁸round/over the roundabout and then ⁹right/straight on. Go ¹⁰past/through a shopping centre on the left-hand side. After about two hundred metres you go ¹¹over/under a bridge. Then at the next junction turn ¹²right/left into East Road. Then take the ¹³first/second turning on the left, and our house is ¹⁴at the end/in the middle of that street on the right-hand side.

Looking forward to seeing you!

Mona

4 Complete the expressions.

Giving directions

Can you tell me ____ to get there?

Here are the ____ to our house.

Go along that road ____ about a km.

Look ____ a petrol station.

There's a post office ____ the corner.

____ about two hundred metres ...

Take ____ second turning on the left.

5 Work with a partner. Make conversations to get from your language school to:

- the post office
- the (bus) station
- the nearest cash machine
- the cinema.

A Can you tell me how to get to the post office, please?

B Yes. Go ...

6 Write an email with directions to your home.

Hi there
Here are the directions to our house.
When you leave the motorway/come out of the station ...

b 24.2 Listen. Choose the correct words.

3 You're in the car with Leo. Tell him what to do next.

- 1 Turn left and go along that road for about a kilometre.
- 1 You're leaving the motorway.
- 2 You're going past the petrol station.
- 3 You're coming to the roundabout.
- 4 You're going past the shopping centre.
- 5 You're turning into East Road.

English in the world

Speed limits

In Britain and the USA, speeds are given in miles per hour (mph).

(1 mile = 1.6 kilometres)

British speed limits are:

70 top speed limit on motorways.

60 top speed limit on other roads.

30 the normal speed limit in towns.

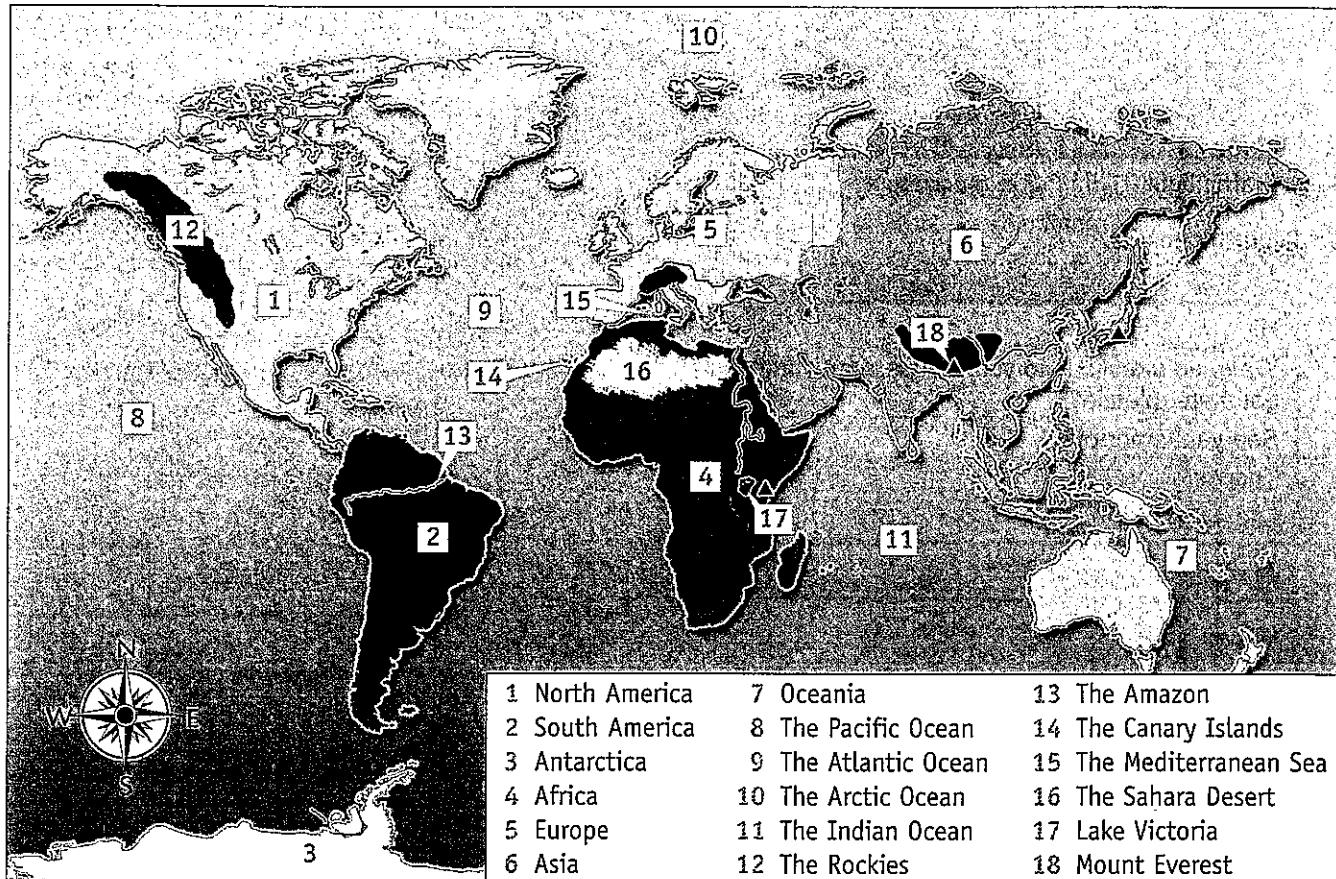
In the USA, the top speed limit is usually 55 mph, but it goes up to 65 mph on some Interstate Highways.

Compare this with your country.

25

VOCABULARY The world

- 1 25.1 Listen and repeat.



Articles with geographical names

Egypt is in Africa.

NOT The Egypt is in the Africa.

The Atlantic (Ocean) BUT Lake Victoria
The Sahara (Desert) Mount Everest

2 Which continent are the places in?

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 The Rockies | are in North America. |
| 1 The Rockies | 5 New Zealand |
| 2 France | 6 Lake Victoria |
| 3 The River Amazon | 7 The South Pole |
| 4 Mount Everest | 8 Canada |

3a 25.2 Listen. Match the people with the places.

1	Jules and Lidia sailed	across	North America.
2	Pedro flew		Europe.
3	Timo and Selma cycled		Africa.
4	Akane ran		the Pacific.

- b Listen again. Where did they start and finish?

- 4 **Your life** Which places in the world do you want to visit? Why? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

Pronunciation

Word stress 3

- 1 25.3 Listen. Is the stress on the first or the second syllable?

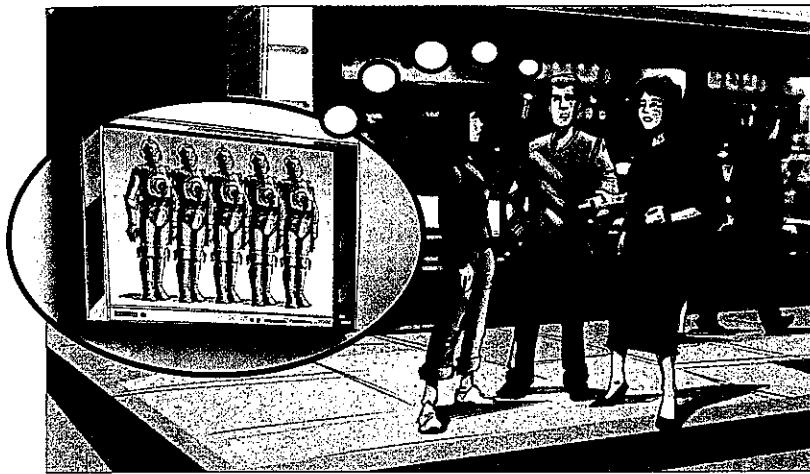
- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 Africa | 6 The Pacific |
| 2 The Sahara | 7 Antarctica |
| 3 America | 8 Europe |
| 4 The Amazon | 9 Asia |
| 5 The Rockies | 10 The Atlantic |

- 2 25.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 3 Listen again. Underline the syllables with the schwa /ə/ sound.

26 GRAMMAR

1a 26.1 Read and listen.



Lucy Guess what! Jordan's going to be on TV on Friday.

Sarah Really? Are you going to be on the news?

Jordan No, I'm not. Don't you remember? I had a part in a TV advert in April.

Sarah Oh, yes. I remember. What time is it going to be on?

Lucy About 9.30. We're going to watch it at my place.

Do you and Peter want to join us for a drink first?

Sarah Thanks. Great. Oh, I can't believe it. I'm going to see Jordan on TV.

Jordan Well, you aren't going to see me exactly. ...
I'm one of the robots!

b Work in a group of three. Practise the conversation.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 107.

going to statements

We use **going to** for:

intentions We're going to watch it at my place.

a definite future Jordan's going to be on TV on Friday.

I'm going to watch a film. I'm not going to watch a film.

He's going to be on TV. He isn't going to be on TV.

We're going to have a party. We aren't going to have a party.

3 Correct these statements.

- 1 Jordan isn't going to be in a film. He's going to be in a TV advert.
- 1 Jordan's going to be in a film.
- 2 They're going to watch it at Jordan's place.
- 3 It's going to be on at eight o'clock.
- 4 They're going to have a party first.
- 5 Jordan's going to be the star.

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 108.

going to questions and short answers

Is he going to be Yes, he is.
on the news? No, he isn't.

Are you going to Yes, I am.
watch it? No, I'm not.

Where are you going to watch it?

5a 26.2 Listen. What are the people going to do this evening? Match the names with the activities.

1 Andy e

2 Shana and Omar —

3 Rosie —

4 Bruno and Martina —

5 Bradley —

6 Emma and Roy —

a have a meal with friends

b play tennis

c send some emails

d go to the gym

e have an early night

f watch a DVD

b Ask and answer about the people.

A Is Andy going to play tennis?

B No, he isn't. He's going to have an early night.

6a Speaking Are you going to do these things this evening?

I'm going to watch TV.

OR I'm not going to watch TV.

1 watch TV

2 go out

3 listen to some music

4 use the computer

5 do some work

6 do some exercise

7 cook dinner

8 read something

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

Try to find some more information.

A Are you going to watch TV?

B Yes, I am.

A What are you going to watch?

Now I can ...

talk about intentions and future events.

27

SKILLS

1 Look at the picture. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who are the two people?
- 2 Where are they from?
- 3 What are they going to do?



With me this morning are Rachel Morgan from Wales and Stefan Popko from Poland. In October they're going to take part in the Global Challenge race.

2 **27.1 Listen.** Choose the correct endings.

- 1 They're going to travel in
 - a a yacht.
 - b a small boat.
 - c a speedboat.
- 2 They're going to sail
 - a to every continent in the world.
 - b from the Arctic to the Antarctic.
 - c round the world.
- 3 The race is unusual because they're going to travel
 - a from north to south.
 - b from west to east.
 - c from east to west.
- 4 The people in the race are from
 - a all over the world.
 - b several European countries.
 - c the UK and Poland.
- 5 They're going to do the race because
 - a they want to break the record.
 - b they want to.
 - c they want to test a new yacht.

3 Listen again. What do these numbers refer to?

They're going to travel over 56,000 kilometres.

56,000 150 12 18 22 1

Language note Large numbers

We use a comma to separate large numbers.

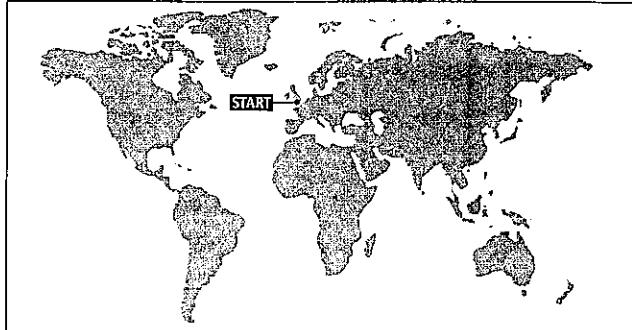
56,000 kilometres

We say:

fifty-six thousand kilometres

~~NOT fifty-six thousands of kilometres.~~

4 Listen again. Draw the route they are going to take.



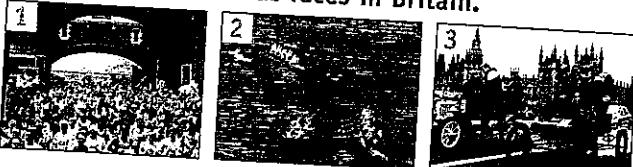
5 Writing Complete the summary of Rachel and Stefan's journey.

In October, ¹ _____ and ² _____ are going to take part in the ³ _____. Rachel is from ⁴ _____ and Stefan ⁵ _____. They're going to sail ⁶ _____ in a ⁷ _____. People normally travel ⁸ _____ to ⁹ _____ because the wind ¹⁰ _____. but Rachel and Stefan are going to travel ¹¹ _____. They're going to travel ¹² _____ kms and it's going to take ¹³ _____. There are going to be ¹⁴ _____ yachts in the race with ¹⁵ _____ people on each yacht. The people are going to be from ¹⁶ _____. Each yacht is ¹⁷ _____ long and the people can only take ¹⁸ _____.

English in the world

Races

These are some famous races in Britain.



- 1 Every year, about 30,000 people take part in the London Marathon.
- 2 There is a boat race between Oxford and Cambridge universities on the River Thames every year.
- 3 In November, the London-to-Brighton rally is for vintage cars.

What famous races are there in your country?

- 1 Look back at Episodes 2 and 3. What happened?
- 2 **28.1** Read and listen to the story. Why is Sarah happy? Is Peter happy too?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 Peter and Sarah are going to get married in June.
 - 2 Sarah's family lives in Singapore.
 - 3 Peter's parents live in Australia.
 - 4 Peter doesn't want to get married.
 - 5 Peter's company sold its old offices.
 - 6 Starlight Properties bought the building.
 - 7 They want to open a supermarket there.
 - 8 The new café is going to be next to The Coffee Shop.

4a Complete the expressions.

**Use these expressions
Expressing doubt**

We don't k_____ yet.
We aren't s_____e.
M_____be ...
Yes, p_____y.

- b Work with a partner. Read the questions. Use the expressions above to give appropriate answers.**

- A Where are Sarah and Peter going to get married?
- B We don't know yet.
- 1 Where are Sarah and Peter going to get married?
- 2 Are they going to live in Singapore?
- 3 Are Lucy and Jordan going to get married?
- 4 Are Starlight Properties going to open an Internet café?
- 5 Is Peter going to tell Ryan and Cindy?
- 6 What are Ryan and Cindy going to do?
- 5 Language check. Underline examples of *going to* in the story.
- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the story.



Sarah I've got some news. Peter and I are going to get married!

Lucy Oh, congratulations! When's the wedding?

Sarah We don't know yet. It's going to be complicated, because my family's in Singapore and Peter's parents live in the USA.

Lucy Yes, I see the problem. Where are you going to live?

Sarah We aren't sure. Maybe in Singapore.

Lucy Well, it's wonderful news. I bet Peter's happy!



Jordan Congratulations, Peter.

Peter What? Oh, yes. Thanks.

Jordan You don't sound very happy.

Peter About getting married? Oh, no. That's great.

Jordan So, what's wrong?

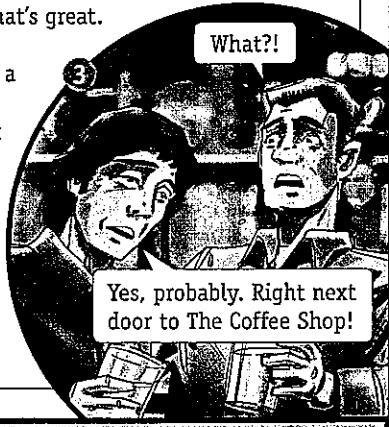
Peter You know that we sold our offices a few weeks ago.

Jordan Yes, to Starlight Properties. We fix their computers, you know.

Peter Really? Well, anyway, it seems they aren't going to use the building for offices.

Jordan Oh? What are they going to do, then?

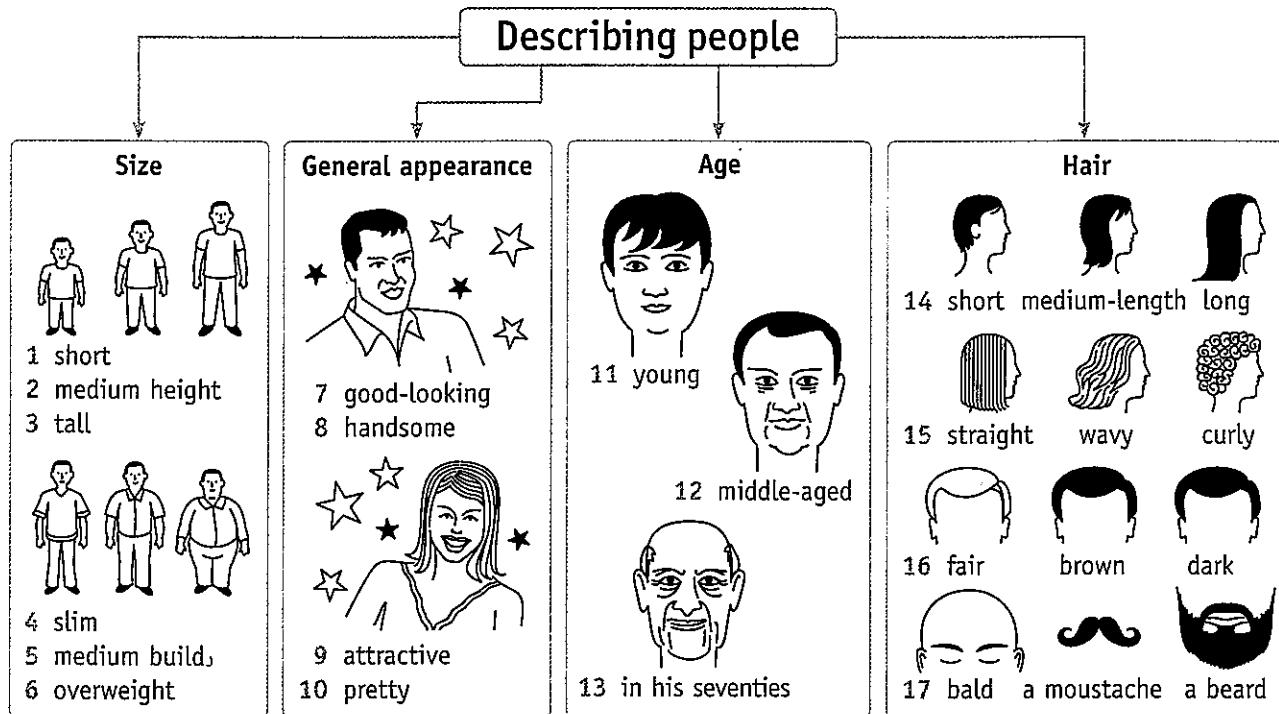
Peter People say that they're going to open a big Internet café.



29

VOCABULARY Describing people

1 29.1 Listen and repeat.



Descriptions

1 We ask: What does he / she look like? How tall is he / she?

2 We often use modifiers in descriptions:

very tall

quite tall

fairly tall

not very tall

3 We normally use:

attractive, pretty and beautiful for women

good-looking and handsome for men.

3 Speaking Describe these people to a partner. Can he / she guess who it is?

- someone in your class
- a film star
- a famous sportsperson
- a character from the *That's Life!* story

He's in his thirties. He's tall and quite slim. He's good-looking. He's got short, dark hair and blue eyes. He's also got a beard.

2a 29.2 Listen. Which words do the people use? Underline the correct words.

1 Imran's new boss:

- overweight / slim
- tall / short
- in her thirties / middle-aged
- medium-length / long hair
- straight / wavy hair
- dark / blonde hair
- not very attractive / pretty

2 The police suspect:

- middle-aged / young
- tall / medium height
- slim / overweight
- straight / curly hair
- fair / black hair
- brown / blue eyes
- a moustache / a beard

b Listen again. What modifiers do the people use?

She's quite slim.

4 Write a description of yourself.

English in the world

Tactful language

When we describe people, we normally try to be tactful and polite.

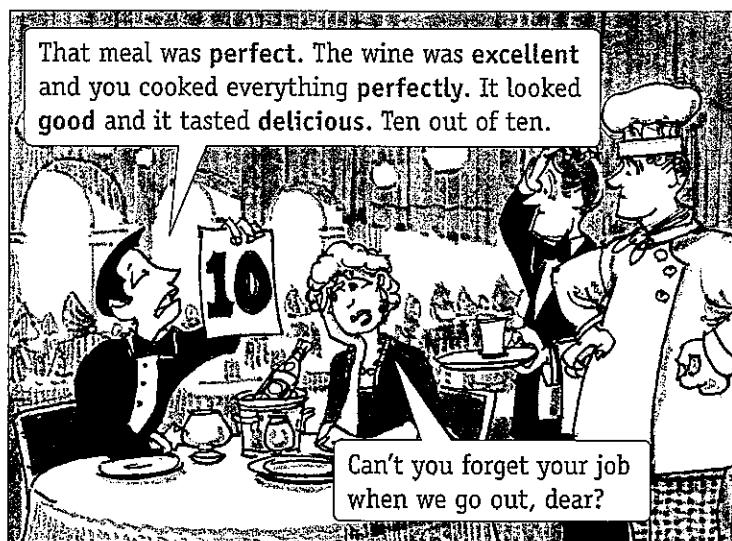
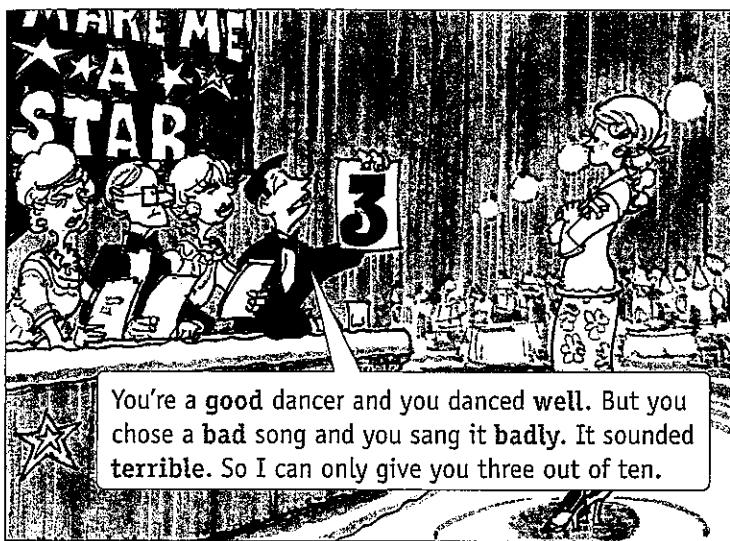
We don't say:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - thin - fat - ugly - old | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> We say: → very slim → a bit overweight → not very good-looking → in his (seventies), etc. |
|--|---|

Compare this with your language.

30 GRAMMAR

30.1 Read and listen.



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 108.

Adjectives and adverbs

1 An adjective describes a noun:

You chose a **bad** song.
 ↑
 adjective

An adverb describes a verb:

You sang **badly**.
 ↑
 verb adverb

2 Adjectives quick nice easy good fast Adverbs quickly nicely easily well fast

3 You danced well. NOT You well-danced.

You cooked everything perfectly.
 NOT You cooked perfectly everything.

30.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 She's a good driver.
She drives well.

4 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 You're a great dancer.
- 2 great a dancer you're
- 3 very he well cooks
- 4 guitar you the badly play
- 5 a meal it delicious was
- 6 the sang perfectly she song
- 7 beautifully he piano the plays
- 8 song a good chose you
- 9 waiter he's excellent an

5a Choose the correct word.

- 1 Are you a *good/well* cook?
- 2 Do you drive *careful/carefully*?
- 3 Do you often sleep *bad/badly*?
- 4 Are you a *nice/nicely* person?
- 5 Do you wake up *easy/easily*?
- 6 Do you walk *quick/quickly*?

b Ask your partner the questions.

Language note Verb + adjective

We use an adjective after these verbs:

be, look, taste, sound.

It sounded terrible.

NOT It sounded terribly.

It looked good. NOT It looked well.

6a Think of a thing, person, or place for these descriptions.

1 I think this book looks interesting.

- 1 looks interesting
- 2 looks dangerous
- 3 tastes delicious
- 4 tastes awful
- 5 sounds beautiful
- 6 sounds terrible
- 7 is easy
- 8 is boring

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

7 Your life Write six sentences about yourself. Use these words.

good well bad badly fast slowly

Now I can ...

describe things and activities.

31

SKILLS

31.1 Listen and repeat.



1 shy



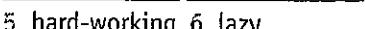
2 confident



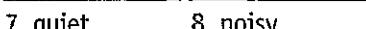
3 generous



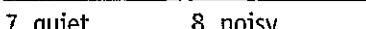
4 selfish



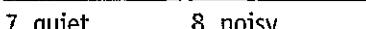
5 hard-working



6 lazy



7 quiet



8 noisy

2a Read the questionnaire. Work with a partner. Ask the questions.

A Do you like getting up late?

B Yes, I do./I don't mind it./No, I don't.

What kind of person are you?

Do you like these things?

- 1 getting up late
- 2 writing emails
- 3 eating new kinds of food
- 4 going to parties
- 5 travelling
- 6 talking on the phone
- 7 shopping
- 8 meeting new people
- 9 working with other people
- 10 dancing

	I like it	I don't mind it	I don't like it
1 getting up late	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 writing emails	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 eating new kinds of food	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 going to parties	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 travelling	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 talking on the phone	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 shopping	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 meeting new people	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9 working with other people	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10 dancing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Score: 3 for every 'I like it'
1 for every 'I don't mind it'
0 for every 'I don't like it'

b Calculate your score.

31.2 Read and listen. Write the missing words from exercise 1.

21-30 You love talking and having a good time. You look ¹ confident, but you hate being alone. You're usually ² _____. You don't like working at a desk and you're sometimes a bit ³ _____. You do things quickly and you don't always finish jobs completely.

11-20 You like talking to people, but you don't mind being alone. You like meeting people and going to parties, but you often leave early. You're ⁴ _____. You can do things easily and you work fast, so you prefer working alone. You can sometimes be a bit ⁵ _____.

0-10 You're quite ⁶ _____ and you like a ⁷ _____ life. You prefer being alone or with a very good friend. You don't like talking to people and you hate ⁸ _____ people. You love reading books. You work hard, but you do things slowly and carefully.

b What kind of person are you? Do you agree with the result?

Language note

Expressing likes and dislikes

	I love	
	I like	talking.
	I prefer	being alone.
	I don't mind	dancing.
	I hate	shopping.
	I can't stand	

4a Writing Write a paragraph about your likes and dislikes. Use this model.

I love I like ... , too, but I prefer I don't mind ... , but I hate ... , and I can't stand

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

A I love cooking. Do you?

B I don't mind it. / No, I can't stand it.

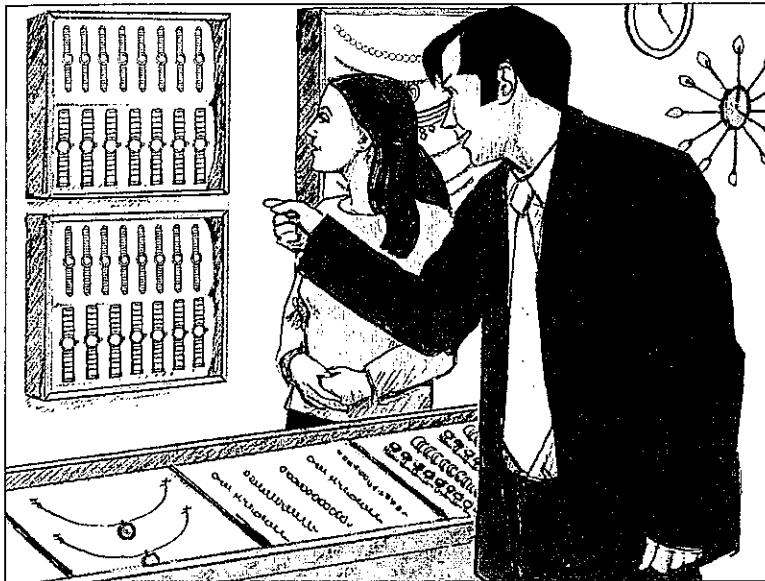
Now I can ...

talk about personality, likes, and dislikes.

32

At the shops

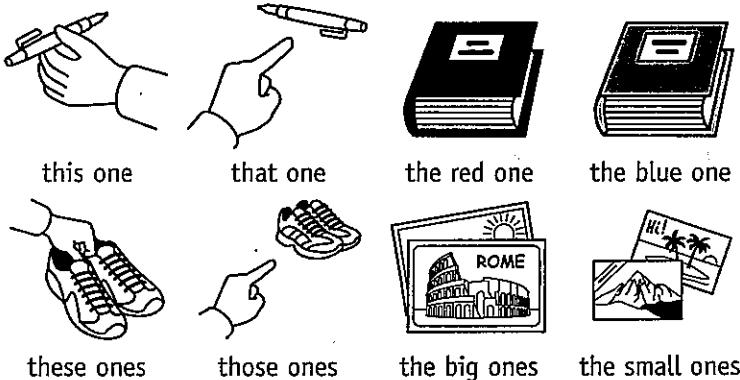
1a 32.1 Read and listen.



- A Can I help you?
 B Yes. How much are those watches, please?
 A The gold ones?
 B No, the silver ones.
 A The small one is €65 and the large one is €80.
 B Can I have a look at the large one, please?
 A Certainly. Here you are.
 B Thank you. Hmm, it's a bit big.
 A Would you like to see the other one?
 B Yes, please. Yes. I think I prefer this one. I'll take it. How much is it again?
 A €65. Anything else?
 B No, thank you.
 A That's €65, then, please.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.

one / ones



2 Ask and answer. Use the cues.

- 1 A Do you like this mobile?
 B I prefer the other one.
- 2 this mobile / other
- 3 those earrings / gold
- 4 these bags / those
- 5 that camera / small
- 6 this watch / black
- 7 these shoes / brown
- 8 this umbrella / large
- 9 these sunglasses / other

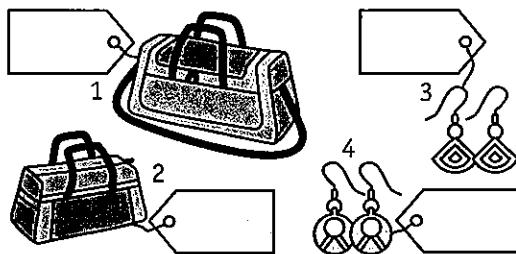
3 Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions In a shop

- Can I you?
 How are those watches?
 Can I have a at that one, please?
 Would you to see the other one?
 I think I this one.
 I'll take .

4 32.2 Listen to two conversations.

- 1 How much is each thing?
- 2 Which things do the people buy?



5 Work with a partner. Use the things in exercise 4. Make the conversations.

Pronunciation

Sentence stress

32.3 Listen and repeat. Use the same rhythm.

- 1 How much are those bags
 How much are those bags over there?
- 2 Can we have a look
 Can we have a look at the large one?
- 3 Would you like to see
 Would you like to see the other one?

Note Listen and repeat. Use the same rhythm to describe things in a shop.

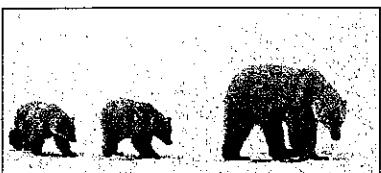
33

VOCABULARY TV programmes

33.1 Listen and repeat.



1 a sports programme



2 a documentary



3 a soap (opera)



4 a sitcom



5 the news



6 the weather forecast



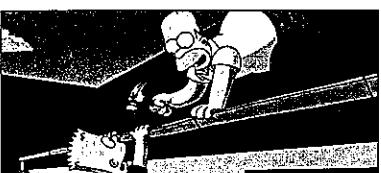
7 a police drama



8 a hospital drama



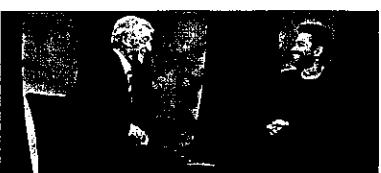
9 a film / movie



10 a cartoon



11 a reality TV show



12 a chat show



13 a game show



14 a TV advert

2 Give some examples of programmes from your country.

Word building 2

This programme is about music.

It's a music programme.

This drama is about a hospital.

It's a hospital drama.

3 33.2 Listen. What kinds of programme do the people like and dislike? Complete the table.

	✓	X
Bob	the news, the ...	
Anna		
Julie		
Ivor		

4 Work with a partner. Talk about the programmes that you like/dislike. Use these questions.

- 1 Do you watch a lot of TV?
- 2 What kinds of programme do you like?
- 3 What programmes don't you like?
- 4 Do you ever watch ... ?
- 5 What's your favourite programme?
- 6 Who's your favourite newsreader?
- 7 What did you watch last night?
- 8 What are you going to watch tonight?

English in the world

TV channels

In Britain there are three kinds of TV channels:

- 1 The BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) gets its money from the government. Everybody with a TV pays an annual licence fee.
- 2 Commercial TV channels like ITV and Channel 4 get most of their money from adverts.
- 3 Cable and satellite TV have hundreds of channels. You pay a monthly subscription to get these channels. Most of them have adverts, too.

Compare this with your country.

34 GRAMMAR

34.1 Read and listen.



Lucy Oh, it's the lottery. I must check my ticket.

No, nothing this week.

Peter Have you ever won anything on the lottery?

Lucy Yes, I have. I've had a few small prizes. Jordan's been very lucky.

Peter Really?

Lucy Yes. He hasn't won millions of pounds, but he's received two big prizes of about £1,000 each.

Peter Wow! That's good.

Lucy What about you? Have you ever won anything on the lottery?

Peter No, I haven't.

Lucy Oh, dear. Well, you've been very unlucky.

Peter No, not really. I've never bought a ticket.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect

1 We use the present perfect for experiences in our lives up to now. We are not interested in when these things happened.

I've had a few small prizes. (up to now)

He's been very lucky. (up to now)

2 I've received a prize. I haven't received a prize.
He's won the lottery. He hasn't won the lottery.

3 Have you ever done these things?

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1 I've been on TV. OR I haven't been on TV or the radio. | 5 save someone's life |
| 1 be on TV or the radio | 6 steal anything |
| 2 meet a famous person | 7 write a poem |
| 3 fall in love | 8 forget someone's name |
| 4 miss a plane | |

Learned and Experiences

When we talk about experiences, we often use **ever** and **never**.

Have you ever won anything? (in your life)
I've never bought a ticket. (in my life)

When we're talking about experiences, we use **have / has been** as the present perfect of **go**.

She's been to China. She's gone to China.

(She's back now) (She's in China now)

I've never been to China.

NOT I've never gone to China.

4 Write six sentences.

- three things that you have done
 - three things that you have never done
- I've been to the USA.
I've never ridden a horse.

5 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect Questions and short answers

Have you ever missed a plane? Yes, I have.
No, I haven't.

Has she ever been on TV? Yes, she has.
No, she hasn't.

6 34.2 Drill. Listen. Make the questions.

- 1 win a prize
Have you ever won a prize?
- 2 go to Africa
Have you ever been to Africa?

7a **Your life** Work with a partner. Ask questions. Use the cues in exercise 3.
A Have you ever been on TV?
B Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

b Work with a new partner. Ask about your first partners.

A Has Carla ever been on TV?
B Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.

Now I can ...
talk about past experiences.

35 SKILLS

1 Read the news stories.

TODAY'S HEADLINES

THE NEWS

EU

1 The heads of government of the G8 countries have arrived in Budapest for their latest meeting.

2 Thieves have stolen money and a large number of diamonds from a jewellery shop in Paris.

3  A tropical storm has hit the coast of North America. Strong winds have destroyed several buildings. More than a hundred people have lost their lives.

4 Four people have died in a fire at a house in Glasgow.

5 There has been a serious accident on the M5 motorway. A lorry has crashed into a bridge. The police have closed the motorway in both directions between junctions 5 and 8.

6  The comedy programme, *The Box*, has won the Independent award for the best TV programme of the year.

7 Alan Jones, star of the TV soap opera *The Avenue*, has married the programme's producer, Rajni Sekar.

2 **35.1 Listen.** There are two mistakes in each story. Underline the parts that are incorrect.

3a Correct the stories. Read them to your partner.

b Listen again and check.

Language focus: Present perfect with present result

We use the present perfect for a past action with a result in the present. We don't know when the action happened.

Past action

The police have closed the motorway.

Thieves have stolen some diamonds.

Present result

You can't use the motorway now.

The diamonds aren't in the bank now.

4 Change the newspaper headlines into full sentences.

1 Some thieves have stolen a famous painting.

1 Thieves steal famous painting

2 POLICE CLOSE BRIDGE

3 STORM HITS WEST COAST

4 Fire destroys cinema

5 LOCAL TEAM WINS CUP

6 Lorry kills dog

7 FILM STAR VISITS SCHOOL

8 Prime Minister flies to Tokyo

5a Writing What's in the news today? Write the headlines for three news stories.

b Work in a group. Present your headlines as a news programme.

Pronunciation

The letter *o*

1 **35.2 Listen and repeat.**

/ɒ/ /ɔ:/ /əʊ/ /ʌ/ /ʊ/
shop storm stolen money

2a Put these words in the correct column above.

more won comedy both sport
programme government tropical
closed short strong forecast
love lorry broken some

b **35.3 Listen and check.**

c Listen again and repeat.

36

That's Life! Episode 5

- Look back at Episodes 3 and 4. What happened?
- 36.1** Read and listen to the story. What is 'the news'?
- Choose the correct words.
 - The party is at *Lucy's / Jordan's* place.
 - The actors and actresses are near the *kitchen / bedroom*.
 - Jordan met them when he was making *an advert / a film*.
 - Anna Harlow is wearing a *black / red* dress.
 - She arrived with *Lucy / Russell*.
 - Russell met Anna *inside / outside* The Coffee Shop.
 - Ryan looks *happy / unhappy*.
 - Ryan and Cindy *know / don't know* about the new café.

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions**Expressing opinions 1****Making statements**

I th_____k ...

I bel_____ve ...

Responding

(Yes,) I think s_____.

(No,) I don't think s_____.

b Work with a partner. Use the expressions above. Express your opinions about these things:

A Reality TV shows are awful!

B Yes, I think so, too.

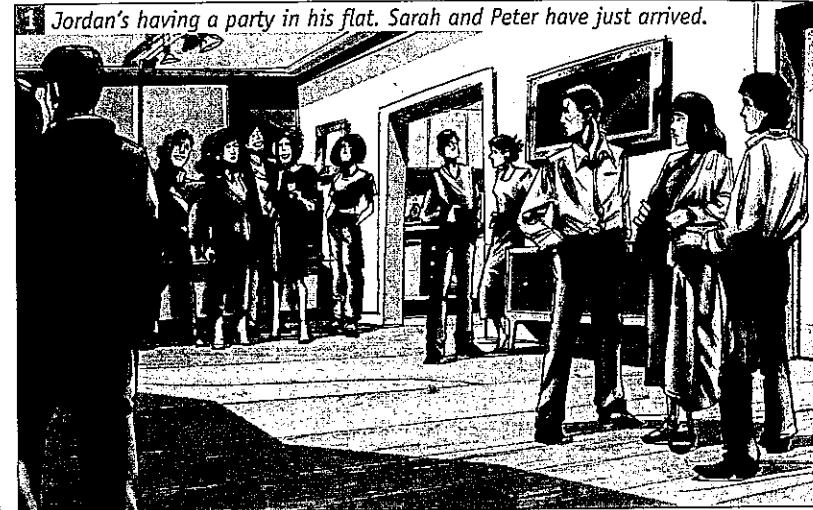
OR

B No, I don't think so.

- reality TV shows
- today's news
- the government
- mobile phones
- football
- the news about the café

5 Language check. Underline examples of the present perfect in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



1 Jordan's having a party in his flat. Sarah and Peter have just arrived.

Sarah Who are those people near the kitchen? They look very stylish.

Jordan They're actors and actresses.

Peter Did you meet them when you were making that TV advert?

Jordan Yes, that's right.

Sarah Anybody famous?

Jordan No, I don't think so.

Peter I think I've seen that blonde woman in the red dress before.

Jordan She isn't an actress. She arrived with Russell.

Sarah Oh, is that Anna Harlow?

Jordan Yes, I think so.

Peter Who's Anna Harlow?

Sarah Russell met her outside The Coffee Shop. I believe she wants to open a shop round here.



2 Peter Hi, Lucy. Are Cindy and Ryan here?

Lucy Yes, they are.

Sarah Ryan's over there, but I can't see Cindy.

Peter Perhaps she's on the balcony.

Lucy Yes, maybe.

Sarah Ryan looks happy.

Peter Well, he probably hasn't heard about the new café. We haven't said anything.

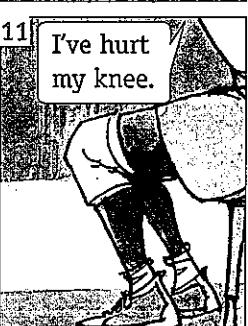
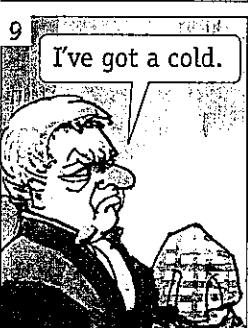
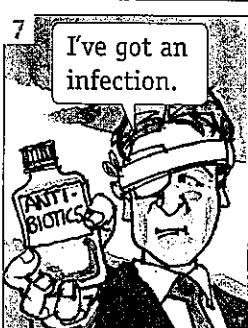
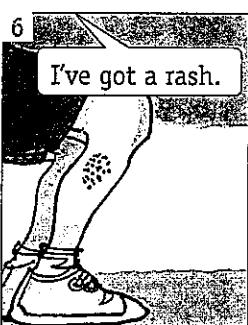
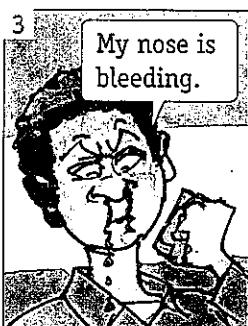
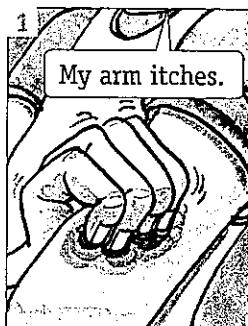
Lucy Well, he and Cindy aren't going to like it when they hear the news.



37

VOCABULARY Health problems

1 37.1 Listen and repeat.



2 What other words or expressions do you know for ... ?

- parts of the body
- illnesses

Possessive adjectives

My head itches.
I've hurt my ankle.
His finger is swollen.
She's cut her thumb.
I've got a bruise on my arm.
You've got a rash on your hand.

3 Say what's wrong. Use the cues.

1 She's bruised her knee. Her knee's painful.

2 I/rash/leg. Leg/itch

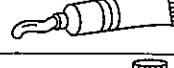
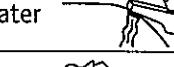
3 He/sprain/wrist. Wrist/swollen

4 You/cut/finger. Finger/bleeding

5 She/burn/hand. Hand/painful

6 I/bruise/thumb. Thumb/swollen

4 37.2 Listen. Write the problem next to the correct remedy.

Problem	Remedy
	a ice 
	b plasters 
	c cream 
a headache	d painkillers 
	e cold water 
	f tissues 

5 Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the table in exercise 4.

A What's the matter?

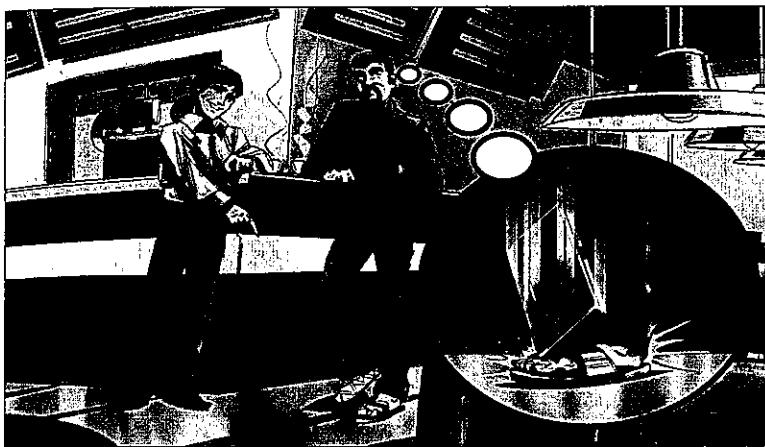
B I've got a headache.

A Oh dear. Here, I've got some painkillers.

B Thanks.

38 GRAMMAR

38.1 Read and listen.



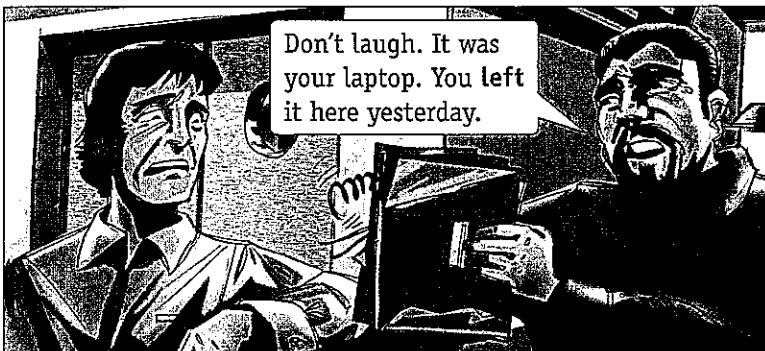
Peter Hello, Ryan. What have you done to your foot?

Ryan I've bruised my big toe.

Peter How did you do that?

Ryan I dropped a laptop on it this morning.

Peter Really? Ha, ha!



b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect and past simple

1 We use the present perfect for:

- a past action with a result in the present. We're interested in the result, NOT the action:

I've bruised my big toe. → (My toe hurts now.)

– experiences up to the present:

I've never had flu. → (up to now)

2 We use the past simple for:

- a completed action in the past. We're interested in the action itself:

I dropped a laptop on it.

– the actual time of the event:

I broke my arm last year. (NOT I've broken my arm last year.)

38.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 I've broken your laptop.

I broke it yesterday.

2 I've hurt my foot.

I hurt it yesterday.

38.3 Listen to three conversations.

Answer these questions each time.

1 What has he/she done?

2 How did he/she do it?

3 When did it happen?

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use your answers to the questions. Follow the pattern.

A What have you done to your elbow?

B I've sprained it.

A How did you do that?

B I fell downstairs.

A Really? When did it happen?

B On Thursday.

5a Speaking Tick ✓ the things you have done.

- had flu
- broken a bone
- lost some money
- fallen off a bike
- dropped something on your foot
- seen an accident
- sprained your ankle
- left something on a bus or train.

b Ask and answer with a partner. Try to find some more information. Use these questions:

How did you ... ?

When did you ... ?

Why were you ... ?

What did you ... ?

Did you ... ?

Were you ... ?

A Have you ever had flu?

B Yes, I have.

A When did you have it?

B When I was fifteen.

A Did you stay in bed?

Now I can ...
talk about accidents.

39 SKILLS

- 1 **39.1** Read and listen to the text.

Advice for travellers

It's holiday time again. Here's some advice to make your holiday easier.

6 Six weeks before you go

Have you had any necessary vaccinations? If not, see your doctor. Have you checked your passport? Is it still valid? If not, get a new one now.

III Packing

1 Don't forget to take:

- medical items:
 - painkillers
 - plasters
 - something for insect bites
 - sunscreen
- toiletry items:
 - toothbrushes
 - toothpaste
 - a hairbrush
- glasses and sunglasses
- your mobile phone and charger
- keys for the luggage

2 Don't put these things in your suitcase:

- any personal medicine (tablets, etc.)
- your passport and tickets
- money or credit cards
- jewellery
- a camera or camcorder
- a child's favourite toy

3 Don't put these things in your hand luggage:

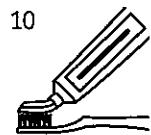
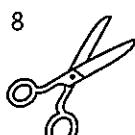
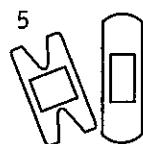
- scissors
- knives
- more than one book or magazine. (They're heavy.)

→ On the plane

- 1 Wear comfortable clothes.
- 2 Avoid alcohol and coffee. They cause dehydration. It's best to drink plenty of water.
- 3 Don't eat a lot.

- 4 Don't stay in your seat for a long time. Try to take some exercise. It's a good idea to get up and walk every hour. When you are sitting down, move your legs and feet.

- 2 Which of these things does the text mention? What does it say about each item?



- 3 What does the text say about ... ?

- books
- water
- exercise

Language note Giving advice

Wear (comfortable clothes).

Don't (eat a lot).

Avoid (alcohol).

Don't forget to ...

It's a good idea to ...

It's best to ...

Try to ...

- 4 **Your life** What do you always take when you travel? Name six things.

- 5 **Writing** Write some advice for travellers to your country. Follow the pattern. Use the expressions in the Language note.

Here's some advice for people coming to ____.

Things to pack

- 1 It's a good idea to ...
- 2 Don't forget to ...

When you're here

- 1 Try to ...
- 2 It's best to ...
- 3 Wear ...
- 4 Don't eat ...

Pronunciation

Plural -es endings

- 1 **39.2** Listen and repeat.

/z/

tissues

/ɪz/

toothbrushes

- 2a Put these words in the correct column above.

- sunglasses knives magazines boxes sandwiches bottles phones offices shoes purses exercises clothes

- b **39.3** Listen, check, and repeat.

At the doctor's

1 40.1 Read and listen.



Doctor Good morning. What seems to be the problem?

Patient I've got a pain in my chest.

Doctor I see. When did it start?

Patient Oh, about three days ago.

Doctor Can I just have a look at it? Where does it hurt?

Patient Here in my chest near my left shoulder.

Doctor Can you lift your arm, please? Does that hurt?

Patient Yes, it does.

Doctor Well, I think you've pulled a muscle.

Patient Oh, that's good.

Doctor Yes, but we'd better check your heart, too. Can you make an appointment with the nurse for a check-up, please?

Patient OK.

Doctor In the meantime, don't lift anything heavy, and move your arm slowly.

Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.

Doctor Goodbye.

2 Read the conversation again. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 The patient has come to see the doctor, because
a his shoulder is swollen. b he's got a pain in his chest.
- 2 The problem started
a yesterday. b three days ago.
- 3 The doctor thinks
a he's pulled a muscle. b he's had a heart attack.
- 4 The patient has to
a see the doctor again. b see the nurse for a check-up.
- 5 In the meantime, he has to
a move his arm slowly. b lift heavy things.

3 Practise the conversation with a partner.

4 Complete the expressions.

REVIEW DIALOGUE At the doctor's

What seems to ____ the problem?

When did it ____?

Can I just ____ a look at it?

Where ____ it hurt?

We'd ____ check your heart.

In ____ meantime, ...

5a 40.2 Listen to two conversations.

Answer the questions for each one.

- 1 What's the problem?
- 2 When did the problem start?
- 3 What does the doctor think it is?
- 4 What is the treatment?

- b Work with a partner. Use the information from exercise 5a. Make the conversations.

English in the world

Health services



Britain has a **National Health Service** (the NHS). All treatment with a doctor or in a hospital is free. If the doctor gives you a **prescription** for some medicine, you pay a **fixed amount** for it. Old people, children, and unemployed people don't pay.

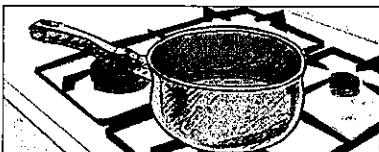
In the USA, all **medical services** are **private**. You pay for everything. Most people have **private medical insurance**. Employers normally pay for this.

Compare this with your country.

41

VOCABULARY Cooking

1 41.1 Listen and repeat.



1 a saucepan



2 a frying pan



3 a bowl



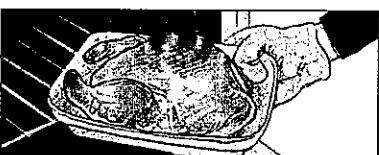
4 a plate



5 boil



6 fry



7 roast



8 bake



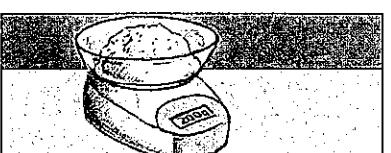
9 grill



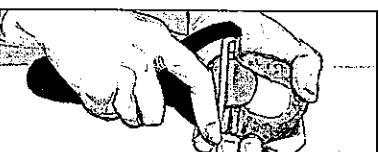
10 mix



11 add



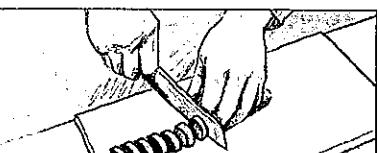
12 weigh



13 peel



14 pour



15 slice



16 stir

2 41.2 Drill. Listen. Say what you've done.

- 1 Put some water in a saucepan.
OK. I've put some water in a saucepan.

Language corner Verbs and adjectives

We can use the past participle of the verb as an adjective:

verb	fry	grill
adjective	a fried egg	grilled fish

3a 41.3 Listen. What does the man order?

TODAY'S SPECIALS

grilled salmon	a baked potato
fried chicken	boiled potatoes
omelette	chips
a mixed salad	
roasted vegetables	
boiled vegetables	

b Complete the conversation.

- A Are you ready to order?
B Yes. Can I have the ¹_____, please?
A What kind of potatoes would you like – baked, boiled, or chips?
B Oh, ²_____, please.
A And what would you like with that?
B Oh, can I have ³_____, please?
A OK, so that's ⁴____ with ⁵____ and ⁶_____.
B Thank you.

4 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations. Use the menu.

English in the world

Eating

In Britain, it's polite to eat everything on your plate. It shows that you have enjoyed the meal.

In China, however, it's polite to leave some food. It shows that your hosts have given you enough food.

Compare this with your country.

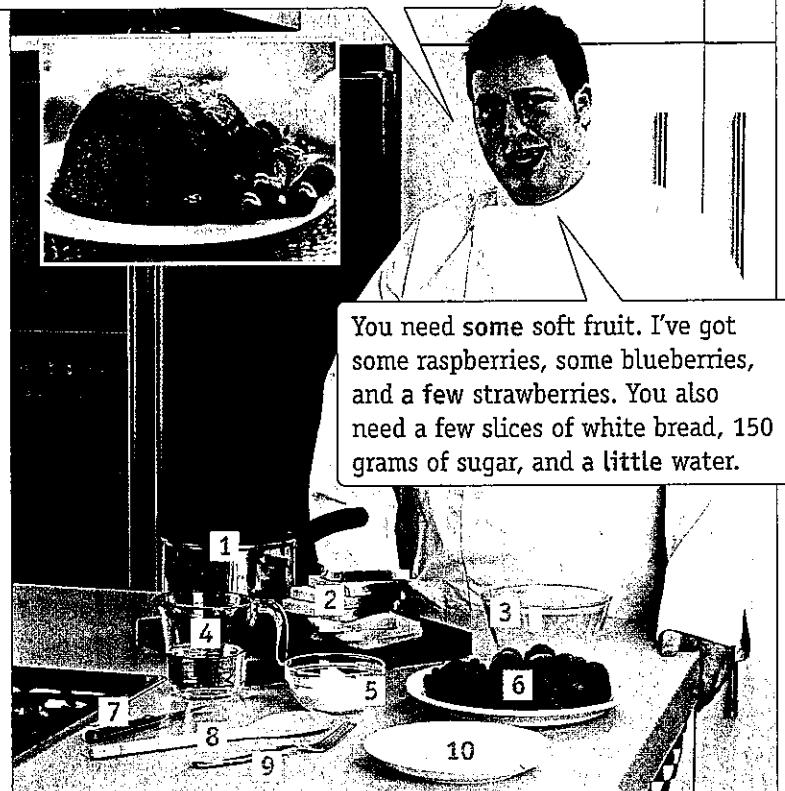
42

GRAMMAR

1a Label the things in the picture.

bread fruit sugar water a knife a plate
a spoon a bowl a saucepan a fork

Today I'm going to make Summer Pudding.
It's an easy recipe. You don't need many
things for it and it doesn't take much time.



You need some soft fruit. I've got
some raspberries, some blueberries,
and a few strawberries. You also
need a few slices of white bread, 150
grams of sugar, and a little water.

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

Use the cues.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| - strawberries | - bottles of water |
| - sugar | - pieces of paper |
| - milk | - beef |
| - slices of toast | - eggs |
| - wine | - butter |

A How many strawberries do you want?

B Oh, just a few.

A How much sugar do you want?

B Oh, just a little.

Language note: Quantity expressions

To talk about 'how much' of an
uncountable thing, we use a quantity
expression:

a slice of bread a kilo of fruit
two slices of bread two kilos of fruit

5a Read the recipe. Choose the correct word.

So, we're going to make Summer Pudding.
We've got ¹a / some nice soft fruit. First,
wash the fruit and put it in ²a / some
saucepan with ³a / some sugar. Add
⁴a little / a few water. Then cook the fruit
for ⁵a little / a few minutes. Try the fruit
and add ⁶a little / a few more sugar, if you
need it. Now take ⁷a little / a few slices
of white bread. Put the bread in ⁸a / some
bowl. Pour the fruit into the bowl. Put
⁹a little / a few more bread on top of the
fruit. Put ¹⁰a / some plate on top and put
the bowl in the fridge for ¹¹a little / a few
hours. Serve the Summer Pudding with
¹²a little / a few cream or ¹³a / some milk.

b 42.1 Read and listen.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 110.

Expressing quantity

Countable nouns

You need a saucepan.

NOT You need saucepan.

I've got some raspberries.

I haven't got any apples.

You need a few things.

You don't need many things.

How many things do we need? How much water do we need?

Uncountable nouns

You need some fruit.

You don't need any milk.

You need a little water.

You don't need much water.

3 42.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence. Use *much / many*.

1 eggs

You don't need many eggs.

2 salt

You don't need much salt.

b 42.3 Listen and check.

6a Writing Tell a partner how to make a simple dish or drink, for example:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| - a boiled egg | - grilled fish |
| - a fruit salad | - a cup of tea or coffee |

b Write down the recipe. Follow the pattern.

This is a recipe for ...

You need ...

First you ...

Then you ...

Serve the ... with ...

**Now I can ...
describe a recipe.**

43 SKILLS

43.1 Read and listen to the text. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What is the basic rule of the diet?
 - a You eat a little but often.
 - b You don't eat anything on one day a week.
 - c You only eat one meal a day.
- 2 When does he eat?
 - a in the evening
 - b every four hours
 - c in the morning

Eat as much as you like

Can you eat a lot and lose weight? Callum Briggs, 43, thinks you can.

I've always liked food. I was slim when I was young. However, when I was 40, I was very overweight and I didn't have much energy. My doctor gave me lots of information about diets and exercise, but it was very complicated. Then I read about this new diet in the newspaper. It's very simple. You eat only one meal a day – in the evening, so I don't eat breakfast or lunch. However, for dinner in the evening you can eat as much as you like.

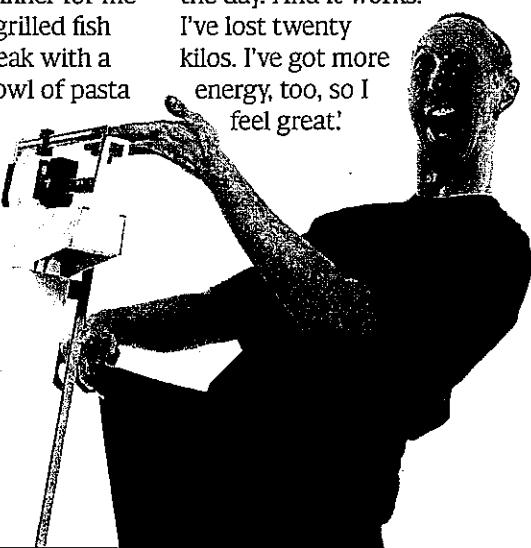
So, a normal dinner for me is a big piece of grilled fish or a really big steak with a medium-sized bowl of pasta or a couple of baked potatoes, and a lot of vegetables or salad. I often have one or two fried eggs with that. Then I have dessert – some fruit or a big slice of apple pie

with cream. After that I have some cheese with several biscuits and a couple of glasses of wine, too.

I have dinner at nine o'clock, so when I go to bed I feel very full. However, I always sleep well.

I started the diet a few months ago. It was very hard at first. I felt very hungry by midday and I wanted a biscuit or a sandwich, but it's OK now. I don't have any snacks and I just drink lots of water during the day. And it works.

I've lost twenty kilos. I've got more energy, too, so I feel great!



43.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why did Callum start the diet?
- 2 How did he learn about it?
- 3 What meals doesn't he eat?
- 4 What time does he eat dinner?
- 5 Does he sleep well?
- 6 When did he start the diet?
- 7 Has he lost any weight?
- 8 How does he feel now?

Language note *but* and *however*

I feel full, **but** I always sleep well.
I feel full. **However**, I always sleep well.

43.3 Join the sentences with *but* and then with *however*.

- 1 I got lots of information. It was complicated.
- 2 I don't eat lunch. I eat a big dinner.
- 3 I eat a lot. I've lost a lot of weight.
- 4 I tried a lot of diets. They didn't work.
- 5 The diet was hard at first. It's OK now.
- 6 I only eat one meal a day. I eat as much as I like.

43.4 What kinds of food and drink does Callum mention? What quantities does he eat? *a big piece of grilled fish* *lots of water*

5 Your life Discuss these questions.

- 1 What do you think of the diet?
- 2 Why do you think it works?
- 3 Do you know any other kinds of diet?
- 4 Do you think diets are a good idea?
- 5 What do you think is a healthy diet?

Pronunciation

The letter *i*

1 43.2 Listen and repeat.

/ɪ/ /aɪ/ /eɪ/ /əɪ/
mix slice first

2a Put the words in the correct column above.

rice chicken fish white bird grill
third drink shirt diet wine girl

b 43.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

Now I can ...
talk about eating habits.

- Look back at Episodes 4 and 5. What happened?
- 44.1** Read and listen to the story. Why does Russell phone Cindy?
- Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
 - Russell has never borrowed the car before.
 - He's gone out with Anna.
 - Russell never puts petrol in the car.
 - He hasn't found a job.
 - Ryan gave Russell his mobile.
 - Ryan has been to see the bank manager.
 - He travelled on the bus.
 - There are two parking tickets on the car.
 - Ryan takes the car.
 - The police think that Ryan has stolen the car.

4a Complete the expressions.

EVENING EXPRESSIONS

Expressing annoyance

Oh, no, ____ again!
 Oh, ____ goodness' sake!
 You ____ joking!
 You can't ____ serious!
 Oh, I don't believe ____!

b Work with a partner. Respond to these events.

- A The computer isn't working.
 B Oh no, not again.
 1 The computer isn't working.
 2 The car's gone.
 3 Someone's stolen the camera.
 4 Those children have broken the window.
 5 There's a parking ticket on the car.
 6 Someone's taken my keys.
 7 I'm sorry. I've lost your mobile.
 8 The shop's closed today.

5 Language check. Underline examples of quantity expressions in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



- 1 At The Coffee Shop...**
- Ryan Oh, no, not again! Has Russell taken the car?
 Cindy Yes, he has. He's gone out with Anna.
 Ryan Again? And he never puts any petrol in the car.
 Cindy Well, he hasn't got much money.
 Ryan That's because he hasn't looked for a job.
 Cindy He's borrowed your mobile, too.
 Ryan Oh, for goodness' sake!



- 2**
- Lucy Hello, Ryan. What are you doing in this part of town?
 Ryan Hi, Lucy. I've been to see our accountant – we're having a few problems with The Coffee Shop. Oh! This is our car!
 Lucy Yes, didn't you park it here?
 Ryan No, I didn't. Russell borrowed it. I came on the underground.
 Lucy You've got a couple of parking tickets, Ryan.
 Ryan You're joking! Well, I've got my car key, so Russell can walk home.



- 3**
- Cindy What? Somebody's stolen the car? You can't be serious.
 Russell Yes. I parked it near Anna's place and now it's gone.
 Cindy Well, you'd better phone the police.

Oh, I don't believe it!

45

VOCABULARY Shops

1 45.1 Listen and repeat.



1 a baker's



2 a butcher's



3 a greengrocer's



4 a chemist's



5 a department store



6 a travel agent's



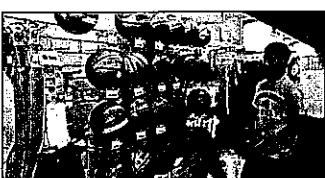
7 a newsagent's



8 an estate agent's



9 a music shop



10 a sports shop



11 a furniture shop



12 a hairdresser's



13 a jewellery shop



14 a flower shop



15 a stationery shop



16 a hardware shop

2 What other kinds of shop do you know?

Word building 3

This shop sells shoes. (Countable noun)

It's a shoe shop.

This shop sells furniture. (Uncountable noun)

It's a furniture shop.

BUT

a clothes shop a sports shop a bookshop

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

A What do you buy at a greengrocer's?

B You buy fruit and vegetables.

OR

A Where do you go to buy a ring or a watch?

B You go to a jewellery shop.

4 45.2 Listen. Where are the people?

1 They're at a shoe shop.

5a **ROLE-PLAY** Think about the main shopping street in your town. Write about five places that you go to.

- 1 There's a big department store. It's called Bedfords. I often go there on Saturdays.
- 2 There are two music shops. Mercury Music is next to the General Union bank and ...

b Compare your sentences with a partner.

Pronunciation

Silent letters

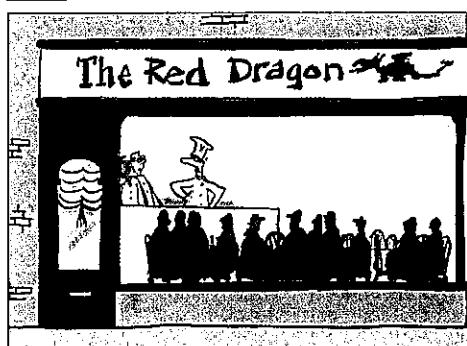
1 Which letters are not pronounced? Circle them.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 camera | 5 strawberry |
| 2 different | 6 jewellery |
| 3 interesting | 7 stationery |
| 4 restaurant | 8 everything |

2 45.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

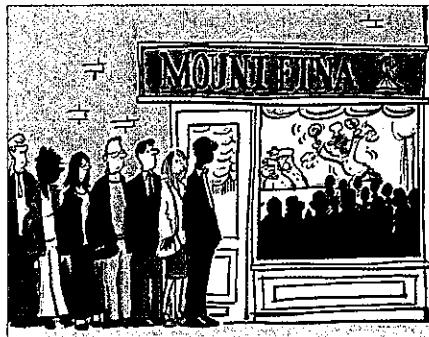
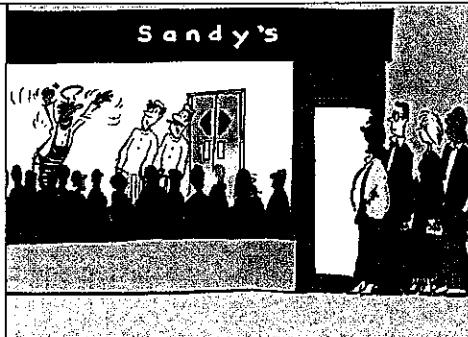
46 GRAMMAR

1 46.1 Read and listen.



The Red Dragon is a small restaurant. It's very popular, so it's usually busy. The food is good, but the chef has got a bad temper.

Sandy's restaurant is smaller than The Red Dragon, but it's more popular, so it's usually busier. The food is better, but the chef has got a worse temper.



Mount Etna is the smallest restaurant in the town, but it's the most popular so it's always the busiest. It's got the best food. Unfortunately, the chef has got the worst temper.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 110.

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
1 one syllable	small	smaller	the smallest
2 -e	large	larger	the largest
3 -y	easy	easier	the easiest
4 short vowel + consonant	big	bigger	the biggest
5 two or more syllables	popular	more popular	the most popular
	good	better	the best
6 irregular	bad	worse	the worst
	far	further	the furthest

Sandy's restaurant is smaller than The Red Dragon.

Mount Etna is the smallest restaurant in the town.

3 46.2 Drill. Listen. Make the comparatives.

- 1 It's a noisy restaurant.
This one's noisier.
- 2 It's an interesting restaurant.
This one's more interesting.

4 Give your opinions. Compare these things. Use the adjectives in brackets.

I think cats are friendlier than dogs.
OR

I think dogs are friendlier than cats.

- 1 cats and dogs (friendly)
- 2 tea and coffee (good)
- 3 letters and emails (nice)
- 4 TV and the radio (interesting)
- 5 English and your language (easy)
- 6 men and women (tidy)
- 7 trains and planes (safe)
- 8 a headache and toothache (bad)
- 9 football and athletics (popular)
- 10 the USA and Australia (big)

5 46.3 Drill. Listen. Give the response.

- 1 This is a big restaurant.
Yes. It's the biggest restaurant in the town.
- 2 This is an expensive shop.
Yes. It's the most expensive shop in the town.

6a Your life What (or Who) is ... ?

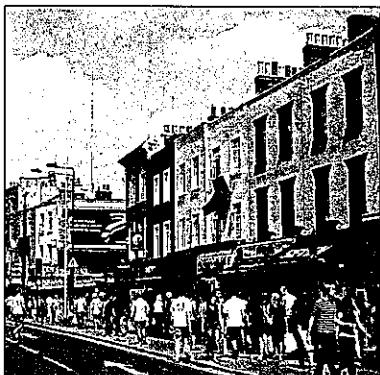
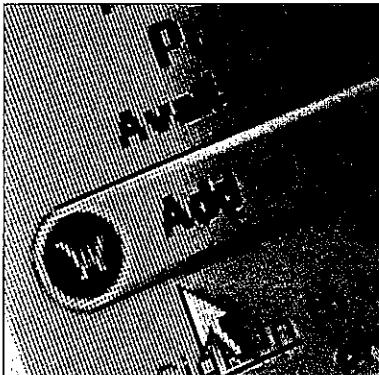
- the largest room in your house
- the most popular sport in your country
- the nicest meal that you've ever had
- the most difficult thing in English
- the most famous person in your country
- the worst school subject
- the best car in the world
- the most expensive thing that you've ever bought
- the best thing that you've ever done
- the worst thing that you've ever done

b Compare your answers with a partner.

47 SKILLS

1 Where do you normally shop? Why?

- at the supermarket
- at local shops
- on the Internet
- at the market



2a 47.1 Listen. Where do the people normally shop? Complete the first column of the table.

	shops	reasons
1 Peter		
2 Susan		
3 Anjit		
4 Birgit		
5 Troy		

b Listen again. What reasons do the people give? Write the correct letters in the table above. There may be more than one reason.

- a It's cheaper.
- b The food is fresher.
- c I can shop 24/7.
- d You can buy everything in one shop.
- e It's friendlier and more personal.
- f Parking is easier.
- g It's more convenient.
- h All the small shops have gone.

c Write about each person.

Peter shops ... because ...

Language note: *not as ... as*

We use *not as ... as* for comparatives.

1 The supermarket is cheaper than the local shops.

The local shops aren't as cheap as the supermarket.

2 The local shops are friendlier than the supermarket.

The supermarket isn't as friendly as the local shops.

3a What do the people say about these things?

- 1 Peter – wine
- 2 Susan – when she was a child
- 3 Anjit – opening hours
- 4 Birgit – South Africa
- 5 Troy – home delivery

b Listen again and check your answers.

4a Your life Answer these questions.

- 1 How often do you shop ... ?
– at a supermarket
– at local shops
– at a street market
– at a shopping centre
– on the Internet
- 2 Which do you prefer?
3 Where do you normally buy food?
4 Which of the opinions from exercise 2b do you agree with?

b Discuss your answers with a partner.

5a Writing Read the text about shopping.

I usually go to the local shops and the market, because I think the food is fresher. However, I go to the supermarket for heavy things like sugar and drinks. You can park there easily, but it isn't as friendly or personal as the local shops. On the other hand, the local shops are often more expensive.

b Write a paragraph about your own shopping habits. Compare the different ways of shopping. Give your reasons.

Now I can ...
compare different kinds of shopping.

48

ENGLISH FOR EVERYDAY LIFE In a clothes shop

1a 48.1 Read and listen. What size shirt does the man buy?

S SMALL	M MEDIUM	L LARGE	XL EXTRA LARGE
------------	-------------	------------	-------------------



Customer Excuse me. Can I try this shirt on, please?

Assistant Yes. The changing rooms are over there.

Customer Thank you.

Later...

Assistant How is it?

Customer It's too tight.

Assistant What size is that?

Customer Large. But it isn't big enough. Have you got it in a larger size?

Assistant Yes. Here you are. This is an extra large.

Customer Thanks.

Later...

Assistant Is that any good?

Customer Yes. This one's fine, thanks. I'll take it.

Assistant Anything else?

Customer No, thank you.

Assistant That's £45 then, please.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2a Complete the expressions.

EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS Buying clothes

Can I t _____ this shirt on, please?

The changing r _____ are over there.

H _____ is it?

W _____ size is that?

Have you got it in a larger s _____?

Is that a _____ good?

b Check your answers with the conversation in exercise 1.

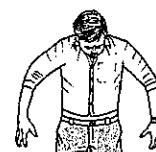
too/ enough



It's too tight.



They're too loose.



It's too small. It isn't big enough.

3 Change the conversation in exercise 1.
Start like this.

Customer: Excuse me. Can I try these shorts on, please?

4a 48.2 Listen to three conversations.

Answer the questions each time.

- 1 What does the person try on?
- 2 What's wrong with it/them?
- 3 What does he/she ask for?
- 4 Does he/she get it/them?

b Work with a partner. Choose one of the conversations.

5 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations in the clothes shop.

English in the world

Bargains

What are these signs in your language?

1

Sale
50% off

2 **BUY 1 GET 1 FREE**

3

Two for the price of one

4 **SPECIAL OFFER**

5

Buy now Pay later

Clothing Down Sale
Everything Three for Two!

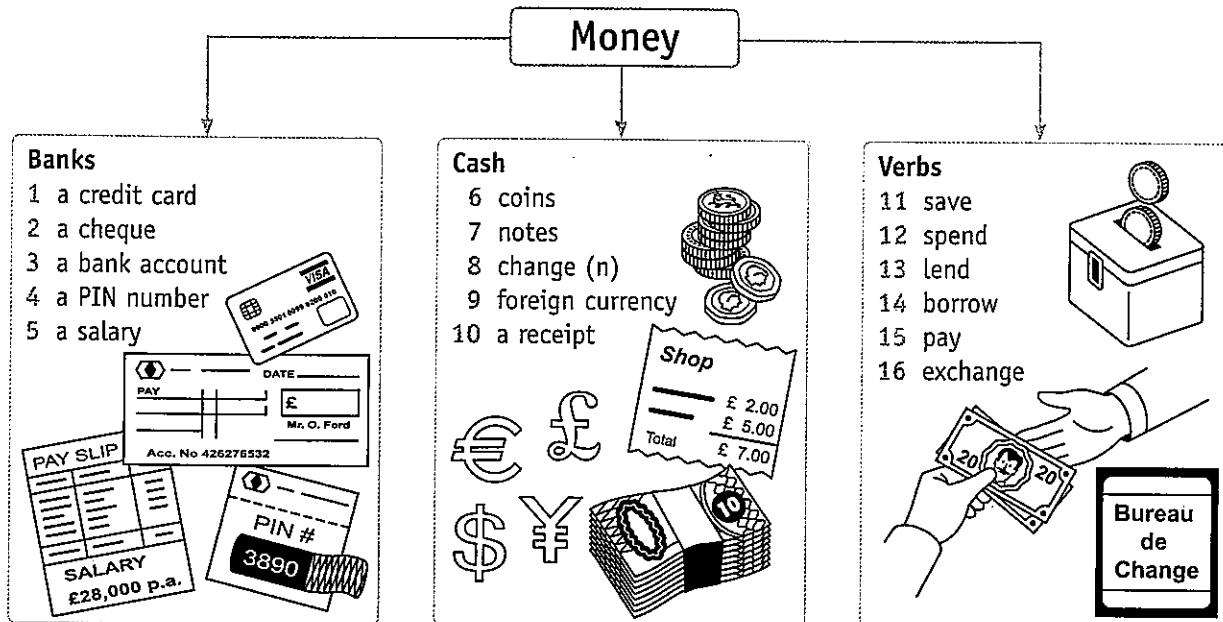
Now I can

ask about and buy clothes

49

VOCABULARY Money

1 49.1 Listen and repeat.



*(Remember to use **pay** (for / by); **lend / borrow**)*

- 1 The verb **pay** is used in different ways:
 pay a/the bill
 pay for a meal/some shoes/a ticket
 pay by credit card/cheque
- 2 lend (to) = give money and take back
 borrow (from) = take money and give back
 He **lent** me some money.
 I **borrowed** some money from him.
 Can you **lend** me £5?
 Can I **borrow** £40?
- 2 Ask and answer with a partner. Use the cues.
- 1 A **Can I pay by credit card, please?**
 B **Yes, of course./No, (I'm) sorry.**
- 1 pay by credit card
 2 borrow some money
 3 have the bill
 4 exchange some foreign currency
 5 have a receipt
 6 pay by cheque
 7 have some coins for the machine
 8 open a bank account
 9 pay for these books
 10 have my change
- 3 49.2 Listen to eight conversations. What's the problem?
 1 He hasn't got enough money.

- 4 **Match** How do people normally do these things in your country? Choose from the different ways in the box.

in cash by cheque by credit card
 on the Internet electronically

- 1 receive their salary
- 2 pay bills
- 3 pay for meals in a restaurant
- 4 take money abroad
- 5 send money abroad

English in the world Cash machines

1 Number the instructions in the correct order.

-
- 1 Please insert your card.
 - 2 Please remove your card and wait for your cash.
 - 3 Please enter your PIN.
 - 4 Please take your cash.

2 What are these instructions in your language?

1 50.1 Read and listen.



Sarah Oh, here's a text from Lucy. She's going to the bank, so she'll be late.

Cindy That's £4.50, please, Peter.

Peter You know, it says in the newspaper that we won't have money in the future.

Cindy Will we pay for everything with credit cards?

Peter No, we won't. People will pay for things electronically.

Sarah How will they do that?

Peter You'll have a computer chip in your hand. When you want something, you'll just hold out your hand.

Cindy Huh, that won't be new. Our kids do that now!



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 111.

Future with *will*

We use *will* for predictions:

In the future, you'll have a computer chip in your hand.

She'll be late.

People will pay electronically. They won't use cash.

I'll be late.

Will we use credit cards?

I won't arrive before 7.30.

Yes, we will.

No, we won't.

How will we pay for things?

When will she arrive?

3a Make sentences about the future. Use the cues.

- 1 We won't use money.
- 2 We'll pay for things electronically.
- 3 use money X
- 4 pay for things electronically ✓
- 5 buy everything on the Internet ✓
- 6 go shopping X
- 7 write letters X
- 8 send emails ✓
- 9 travel to work X
- 10 work from home ✓

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

A Will we use money?

B No, we won't.

4a 50.2 Listen to the messages in Kay's voice mail. Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with *will* or *won't*.

email	be	need	have
arrive	miss	phone	fix

- 1 The visitors won't arrive before three o'clock.
- 2 Farida _____ the photographs.
- 3 Her husband _____ time to get the theatre tickets.
- 4 John _____ the meeting.
- 5 Her mother _____ later.
- 6 The engineer _____ the computer tomorrow morning.
- 7 Her son _____ a meal.
- 8 Margaret _____ here next week.

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer about the messages.

A Will the visitors arrive before three o'clock?

B No, they won't.

5 Writing Make some predictions about your life in ten years' time. Write six sentences.

1 I'll be a famous writer.

2 I'll live in a different country ...

3 I'll be married/single/divorced ...

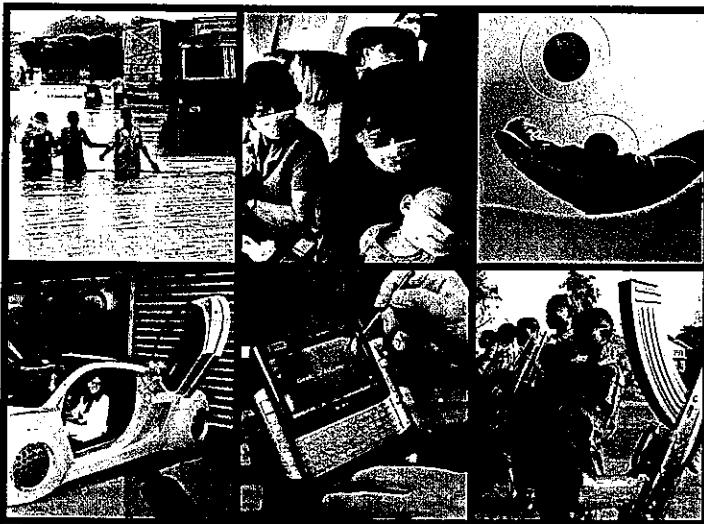
Now I can ...
talk about the future.

51 SKILLS

1a **51.1** Read and listen. Tick ✓ the topics the people write about.

- global warming
- travel in space
- computers
- diseases
- cars
- wars

What will the future be like?



1 In the future, I don't think people will have a computer, a mobile phone, a camera and things like that. They'll just have one small computer. It will be as small as a mobile phone and it will be a lot more powerful than today's computers. In fact, it will do everything, like book holidays or order food from the supermarket. You won't need a keyboard. You'll just talk to it. You'll say: 'I want to fly to Moscow on Friday.' Then the computer will buy the tickets. So life will be a lot easier – as long as you don't lose your little computer. *Tadashi, Japan*

2 Will we have cars in the future? Yes, I think we will, but they'll be very different from today's cars. First, they won't use petrol or diesel, because we won't have enough oil in fifty years' time. Cars will probably use electricity or hydrogen. So they'll be quieter and cleaner. And I think the roads will be safer, too, because you won't actually drive your car. You'll just sit in it and the car's computer will drive it. So there won't be any accidents. *Flavia, Brazil*

3 I don't think the world will be a safer place in the future. I think it will be more dangerous – because of diseases. People travel a lot now, so diseases move very quickly from place to place. In the future, travel will be faster and cheaper, because planes will be better. Sooner or later a new and very dangerous disease will appear. It will move quickly from one continent to another and millions of people will die. *Miklos, Hungary*

b Do the writers think life in the future will be better or worse?

2 What do the writers think will be ... ?

- quieter and cleaner
- smaller and more powerful
- more dangerous
- easier
- safer
- faster and cheaper

3 What else do the writers say about these things?

- mobile phones
- computers
- transport
- the world's population

Language note Expressing opinions 2

I think the world will be safer.
I don't think the world will be safer.
NOT I think the world won't be safer.

4 Give your opinions. Use the cues.

1 I think we will drive cars.
OR I don't think we will drive cars.

- 1 we/drive/cars
- 2 the world/be/more dangerous
- 3 computers/do/everything for us
- 4 millions of people/die/from diseases
- 5 cars/use/electricity
- 6 global warming/destroy/the earth
- 7 we/have/wars
- 8 people/take/holidays in space

5 Speaking Write six questions about the future. Interview a partner. Find reasons for his/her opinions.

- A Will the world be safer in the future?
- B No, I think it will be more dangerous.
- A Why?

Pronunciation

Sentence stress

1 **51.2 Listen.**

I'll be late I'll be late for the meeting.

2 **51.3 Listen and repeat.**

I'll see you I'll see you this evening.
We'll be there We'll be there at ten.

- Look back at Episodes 5 and 6. What happened?
- 52.1** Read and listen to the story. What do Ryan and Cindy decide to do? Why?

3 Complete the sentences.

- Melanie wants to stay at university.
- _____ are still empty.
- _____ wants to open a new café.
- _____ is losing money.
- _____ is still looking for a shop.
- _____ won't give Ryan and Cindy a loan.
- _____ thinks Anna's offer is OK.
- _____ wants to live in Spain.
- _____ doesn't want to leave her friends.
- _____ don't have any money.

4a Complete the expressions.

ENGLISH EXPRESSIONS

Talking about money problems

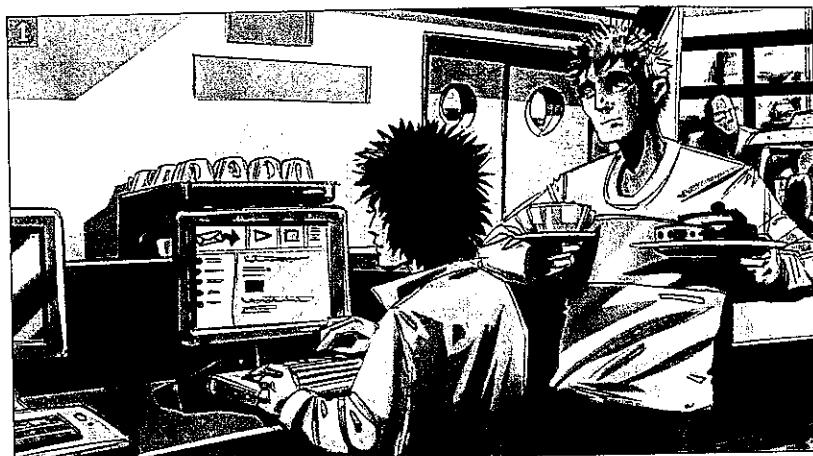
How much w_____ that cost?
 We c_____ afford it.
 Business isn't v_____ good.
 It's losing m_____.
 It isn't a b_____ price.
 We're b_____.

b Use the expressions. Complete these conversations.

- A We need a new car.
 B How _____?
 A About £15,000.
 B _____.
 A Why not?
 B We're _____.
- A They've had an offer for the café.
 B Yes, and it _____.
 A But why do they want to sell it?
 B _____.
 A Really? Why is it losing money?
 B _____.

5 Language check. Underline the examples of the future with *will* in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Cindy There's an email here from Melanie. She wants to do another year at university.

Russell How much will that cost?

Cindy A lot. And we can't afford it. Business isn't very good.

Russell Why's that?

Cindy The factory has closed and Peter's old offices are still empty, so we've lost a lot of customers.

Russell A big company wants to open an Internet café in those offices.

Cindy I know, and that will be the end for us.

Russell What does Dad think?

Cindy He wants to sell The Coffee Shop, but who'll buy it when it's losing money?

Russell Anna's looking for a place for her shop. Maybe she'll buy it.



Cindy Will the bank give us a loan?

Ryan No, they won't, but we've had an offer from Anna Harlow. Look.

Cindy Well, it isn't a bad price, but where will we live, Ryan? The café's our home, too.

Ryan We'll open a bar on the Costa del Sol in Spain! I've always wanted to do that.

Cindy But all our friends are here, Ryan.

Ryan What else can we do? We're broke!



53

VOCABULARY Activities

1 53.1 Listen and repeat.



1 clubbing



2 mountain-climbing



3 sailing



4 scuba-diving



5 water-skiing



6 canoeing



7 going to the gym



8 sunbathing



9 going out with friends



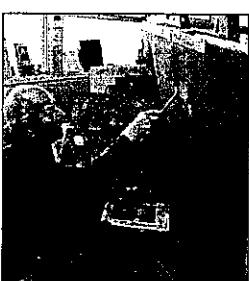
10 relaxing



11 collecting things



12 doing DIY



13 painting



14 sightseeing



15 surfing the Internet

When we talk about activities, we use the **-ing** form with no article.

I've never tried water-skiing.
NOT I've never tried water-ski.
Scuba-diving is great.
NOT The scuba-diving is great.

2 53.2 Drill. Listen. Ask the question.

1 sunbathe

Do you like sunbathing?

3 Ask and answer with a partner about the activities. Follow the pattern.

A Do you like ...-ing?

B Yes, I do. I love it./I think it's great.

I've never tried it, but it looks exciting/interesting/dangerous.

I don't know, but I'd like to try it.

I don't mind it.

No, I don't. I can't stand it./I think it's boring.

4 What other leisure activities do you know? Put them in a table like this.

playing	doing	(other verbs + -ing)
tennis	karate	gardening

5 53.3 Listen. What do the people like? Complete the table.

	Arnold	Beth
likes		
doesn't mind		
doesn't like		
hasn't tried		

6 Complete the sentences about your own life.

1 I love ____.

2 I don't like ____.

3 I don't mind ____.

4 I've never tried ____.

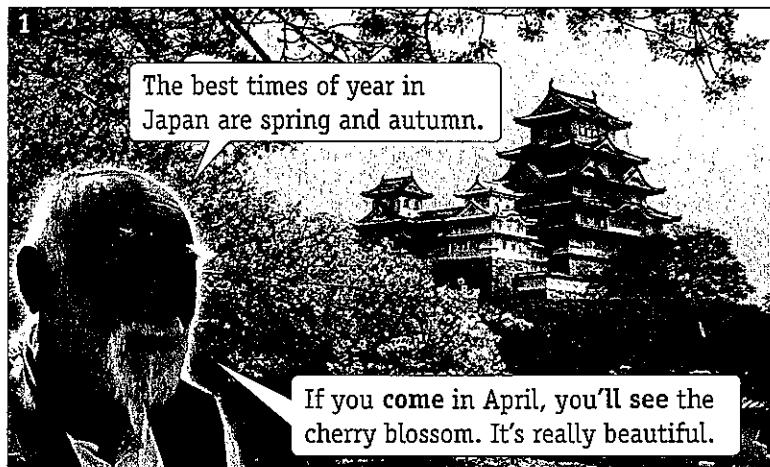
5 I'd like to try ____.



Now I can
talk about activities

54 GRAMMAR

54.1 Read and listen.



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

First conditional

We use a first conditional to talk about real conditions in the future.

an if clause a main clause

If you come in April, you'll see the cherry blossom.

a main clause an if clause

You'll see the cherry blossom if you come in April.

NOT You'll see the cherry blossom if you will come in April.

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- If we book on the Internet, it will be cheaper. (book/be)
- You get a cheaper holiday if you book it now. (get/book)
- If we travel on Wednesday, the airport is busy. (travel/not be)
- You have the best weather if you come in June. (have/come)
- You need a visa if you have an EU passport. (not need/have)
- If you travel by train, it takes longer. (travel/take)
- If you go in winter, it is too hot. (go/not be)
- You need vaccinations if you want to go to Africa. (need/want)

Language note: when

I'll phone you if the plane is late.
(future possibility)

I'll phone you when I get there.
(future certainty)

4a 54.2 Listen. Match the cues.

- collect the tickets c
- phone you
- look for a hotel
- send you a postcard
- book the holiday
- take a taxi

- arrive
- go to the airport
- have my lunch break
- leave the office
- go on holiday
- go into town

b Write the sentences.

- I'll collect the tickets when I have my lunch break.

5a Speaking Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

- If I'm ill tomorrow, I won't go to work.
- If the weather is nice on Sunday, .
- If I stay in this evening, .
- When I get home tonight, .
- When I leave work tomorrow, .
- If it rains on Saturday, .
- When I go on holiday this year, .
- If I haven't got enough money at the end of the week, .

b Compare your answers with a partner. Are any of your answers the same?

Pronunciation

won't and want

1 54.3 Listen and repeat.

1 We won't be there.

We want to be there.

2 We won't go by train.

We want to go by train.

2 54.4 Listen. Do you hear want or won't each time?



Now I can ... talk about future possibilities and certainties.

- 1 55.1 Read and listen. Match the texts with the correct pictures.



If you want to try a different holiday this year, you'll find some great ideas in our holiday guide.

1 With its blue sea and beautiful islands, Croatia is the place for a sailing holiday. On a one-week course you'll learn how to sail a yacht while you travel along the coast from island to island. You'll live on the yacht with your teacher and the other students, and you'll sail about thirty kilometres a day. You'll stop at a different town for dinner and some sightseeing each night.

2 Do you want to change your life? Then a holiday at the Chiva-Som resort in Thailand will help. You'll stay at the famous Chiva-Som Hotel by the sea. Here you can relax and forget all your problems. You can try yoga and tai chi or have a massage. The food is delicious and very healthy. You can also do a course in Thai cooking.

2 Find this information about each holiday.

- 1 Where is the holiday?
- 2 Where do you stay?
- 3 What is the main activity?
- 4 What other things can you do?

Language note: Time clauses

We can use the first conditional structure with time clauses that start with *when*, *before*, *after*, *while*:

- 1 I'll phone you **when** I get to the airport.
- 2 **Before** we go to the travel agent's, we'll check the Internet.
- 3 I'm sure these postcards will arrive **after** we get home.
- 4 I'll look **after** the bags **while** you go swimming.

DREAM HOLIDAYS

3 If you like dancing, then you'll love a trip to Cuba with Club Dance Holidays. In the mornings you'll learn how to dance the tango and other dances. At night you'll go dancing at Havana's famous clubs. You'll stay at the five-star Hotel Nacionál. If you stay for an extra week, you'll have the chance to explore Cuba's wonderful rainforests and beaches.

4 Scuba-diving will take you to a new world. You'll stay at the Rosetta Hotel in Sharm el-Sheikh, Egypt. Before you go into the sea, you'll learn how to scuba-dive in the hotel's swimming pool. Then you'll move into the warm water of the Red Sea with its beautiful coral reefs and tropical fish. When you aren't in the water, there will be flights to some of Egypt's ancient monuments.

3 What do these adjectives describe in the texts?

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 blue | 5 wonderful |
| 2 beautiful | 6 warm |
| 3 famous | 7 tropical |
| 4 delicious | 8 ancient |

4a Your life Answer the questions.

- 1 Where do you normally go on holiday?
- 2 When do you go?
- 3 How long do you stay for?
- 4 Who do you go with?
- 5 Where do you stay?
- 6 What things do you do?

b Use the questions. Ask and answer with a partner.

Now I can ...
understand a holiday guide.

1a 56.1 Read and listen.



Receptionist Good morning, The Dorset Hotel.

Caller Hello. I'd like to make a reservation, please.

Receptionist Certainly. When for?

Caller For 18 July.

Receptionist How many nights?

Caller Three nights.

Receptionist Just one moment. Yes, that's fine. How many guests will there be?

Caller Two – me and my husband.

Receptionist And would you like a double or a twin room?

Caller A double, please. And we'd like a room with a sea view, please.

Receptionist Yes, that will be fine. The price will be £85 per night.

Caller Does that include breakfast?

Receptionist Yes, it does. So what name is it, please?

Caller It's Mr and Mrs Taylor. Will you confirm the reservation by email?

Receptionist Yes, of course.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions: Booking a hotel room

I'd like to _____ a reservation, please.

When _____?

How _____ nights?

_____ many guests will there be?

We'd _____ a room with a sea view.

Does that _____ breakfast?

What _____ is it, please?

b Who says each thing – the caller or the receptionist?

3a 56.2 Listen to two more conversations. Complete the table.

	The Angel	Hotel Jumbo
Name		
Arrival		
No. of nights		
No. of guests		
Type of room		
Price per night		
Breakfast included		

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the information in the table.

4a Writing Read the email.

To: taylor425@world.com
Subject: Confirmation of reservation

Dear Mrs Taylor

This is to confirm your reservation at our hotel for 18 July for three nights. The reservation is for two people in a double room with a sea view.

The price will be £85 per night including breakfast.

We look forward to welcoming you to our hotel.

Yours sincerely,
M Barker
Manager

b Write an email to confirm one of the reservations in exercise 3.

English in the world
Hotel signs

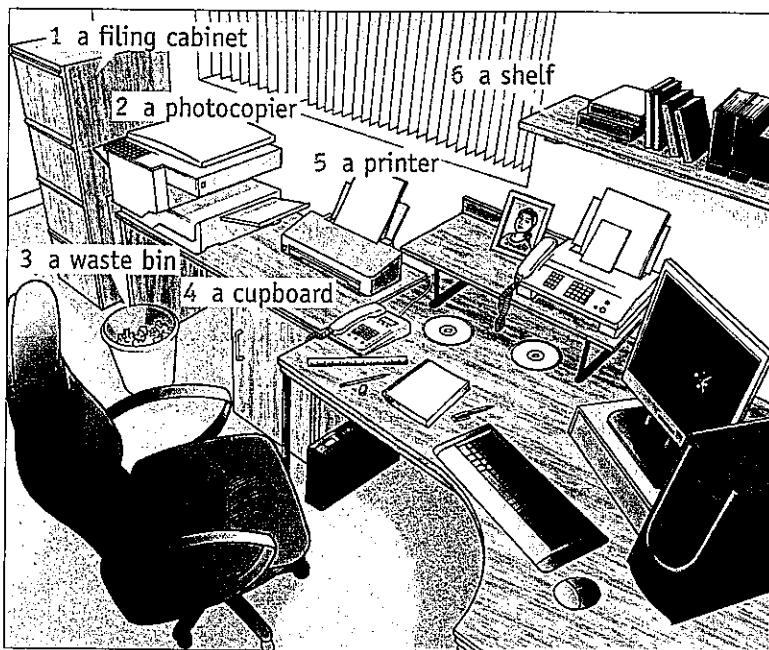
What are these signs in your language?



57

VOCABULARY In the office

1a 57.1 Listen and repeat.



b What other things in the picture can you name?

2 Complete the expressions with the correct verbs.

do send use go have make

Office activities

1	→ an email	
2	→ a letter	
3	→ an appointment	
4	→ a phone call	
5	→ some filing	
6	→ some photocopying	
7	→ to a meeting	
8	→ on the Internet	
9	→ a break	
10	→ a day off	
11	→ the computer	
12	→ the fax machine	

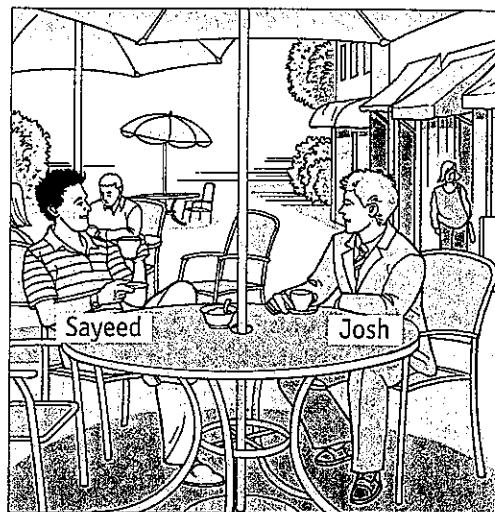
3a Write the past simple of the verbs in exercise 2.

send - sent

b 57.2 Drill. Listen. Say what you did.

- 1 an appointment
I made an appointment.

4a 57.3 Listen. Why isn't Sayeed wearing a suit?



b Listen again. Number the things that Josh did in the correct order.

- went to a meeting
- sent some emails
- made a couple of appointments
- had a break
- went on the Internet
- 1 made a few phone calls
- did some filing

5a Did you do any of the things in exercise 2 yesterday? What other things did you do?

b Speaking Work with a partner. Talk about your day yesterday. Try to get more information.

A How was your day yesterday?
B It was great/OK/fine/terrible/not very good.

A What did you do?
B ...

A Really?/Oh, right./Why did you do that?/Was it good?

58

GRAMMAR

1 58.1 Read and listen.



Daniel Well, I must go. I have to make some phone calls.

Lucy Me, too. I have to photocopy this report.

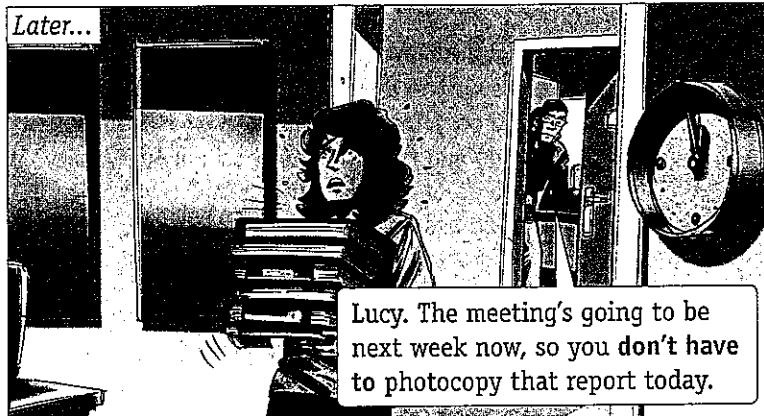
Daniel Oh, there's something wrong with the photocopier. We mustn't use it.

Lucy But Olive has to have the report for a meeting today.

Daniel Well, take it to The Photo Shop.

Lucy Good idea, but I must hurry. The meeting's at 12 and I mustn't be late.

Later...



Lucy. The meeting's going to be next week now, so you don't have to photocopy that report today.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

have to/must/mustn't

I have to send an email. = Do it. It's necessary.

I must hurry.

You mustn't use the phone. = Don't use it. It isn't allowed.

3 Say what you **must** or **mustn't** do.

1 You mustn't use the lift. You must take the stairs.

1 Don't use the lift. Take the stairs.

2 Park between the white lines. Don't park on the yellow lines.

3 Stop when the light is red. Don't stop on the crossing.

4 Put all paper in the bin. Don't put bottles or food in the bin.

5 Don't use the office phone for personal calls. Use your mobile.

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

must/mustn't/don't have to

You mustn't go.

= Don't go. It isn't allowed.

You don't have to go.

= It isn't necessary. You can go if you want to.

5 Complete the sentences with **mustn't** or **don't have to**.

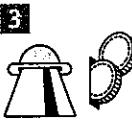
1



2



3



4



5



6



1 You mustn't turn left here.

2 You _____ turn right here.

3 You _____ pay by credit card.

4 You _____ smoke here.

5 You _____ pay.

6 You _____ drink the water.

6a Writing Write six sentences about your life with **have to/don't have to**.

1 I have to/don't have to get up early on Saturdays.

b Write six rules for your home.

1 You mustn't smoke.

2 You must ...

Pronunciation

must / mustn't

58.2 We don't usually pronounce the **t** in **must**. Listen and repeat.

1 I must go.

2 You mustn't do that.

3 We must leave.

4 We mustn't swim here.

5 I must get up.

6 You mustn't smoke.

7 You must be careful.

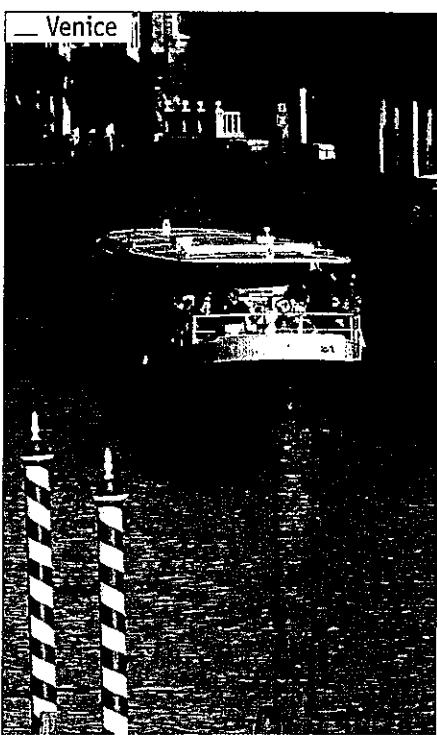
8 We mustn't go out.



Now I can ...
express obligation.

59 SKILLS

- 1 **59.1 Listen.** Choose the correct city for each speaker.



- 2 Listen again. Complete the table.

	1	2	3
How does he/she travel to work?			
How long does it take?			
What problems does he/she mention?			

Language notes: Time expressions

How long does the journey take?

It takes ... – an hour

- half an hour
- an hour and a half
- an hour and a quarter
- a couple of hours
- two and a half hours.

- 3a Complete the text for speaker 1.

- 1 He lives near _____. He works in _____. He walks to the station and he takes the train to _____. Then he _____. The journey takes about _____. The journey is OK, but in the summer _____.

- b Write texts for speakers 2 and 3.

- 4a **Your life** Answer these questions.

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Where do you work/study?
- 3 How do you travel to work/school/university? Why?
- 4 How long does the journey take?
- 5 What things do you do on the journey?
- 6 What problems do you sometimes have?

- b Ask and answer with a partner. Compare your journeys.

English in the world

Rush hour

In Britain, the busiest times for transport are: **7.30–9.15 a.m.** The morning **rush hour**. People go to work, and children go to school. There are often long **traffic jams**.

2.45–4 p.m. Children come home from school. A lot of parents take their children to and from school by car. We call this **the school run**.

5–6.30 p.m. The evening rush hour. People go home from work. The trains and buses are usually very crowded and a lot of people have to stand.

Compare this with your country.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 6 and 7. What happened?
- 2 **60.1** Read and listen to the story. What do Sarah and Jordan find?
- 3 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where are Jordan and Sarah?
 - 2 Where is Sarah going?
 - 3 What has Sarah brought for Jordan?
 - 4 What is Jordan doing?
 - 5 Who do the laptops belong to?
 - 6 Who is Anna Harlow?
 - 7 What is the email about?
 - 8 Why doesn't Jordan want to open the email?
 - 9 Why does he open it?
 - 10 What does Sarah do when she reads it?

4a Complete the expressions.

EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS
Greeting a visitor

Come _____ in.
 This is _____ surprise.
 It's nice _____ see you.
 Take _____ seat.
 Let _____ get you (a cup of coffee).

b Work with a partner. Make conversations.

- A You have come to see B.
- B Welcome A.
- A Say why you have come.
- B Invite A to sit down and offer a drink.
- A Accept or refuse the drink.
- B Respond.

5 Language check. Underline examples of *must/mustn't* or (*don't*) *have to* in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Sarah Hello!
 Jordan Oh, hi, Sarah. Come on in. This is a surprise.
 Sarah I'm going to the university, but I don't have to be there till 3.30.
 Jordan Well, it's nice to see you. Take a seat. Let me get you a cup of coffee.
 Sarah You don't have to do that. I've brought some coffee and some doughnuts.
 Jordan Sarah, you're wonderful. Peter's a lucky man.



Sarah You look busy.
 Jordan Yes. We have to check these laptops from Starlight Properties.
 Sarah They bought Peter's old offices.
 Jordan Yes. There's a problem with the email program on this one. It ...
 Sarah Look! There's an email from Anna Harlow. That's Russell's girlfriend.
 Jordan Oh, yes. Subject: 'The Coffee Shop'. Why is she writing to Starlight about that?
 Sarah Well, come on. Let's have a look at it.
 Jordan No, we mustn't open emails.
 Sarah I won't give you your coffee and doughnut if you don't open it.
 Jordan You're a hard woman, Sarah. I hope Peter knows!



Peter. I'm at Jordan's workshop. You must come here quickly!

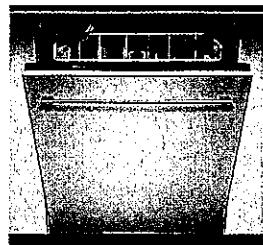
61

VOCABULARY In the home

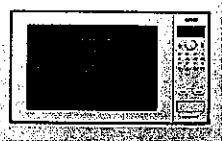
1 61.1 Listen and repeat.



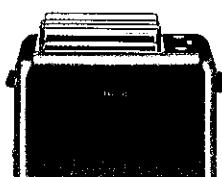
1 a washing machine



2 a dishwasher



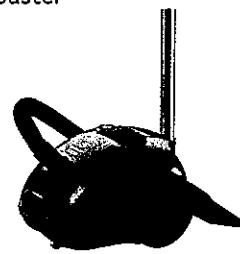
3 a microwave



4 a toaster



5 a kettle



6 a vacuum cleaner



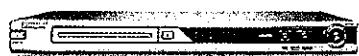
7 a hairdryer



8 a shaver



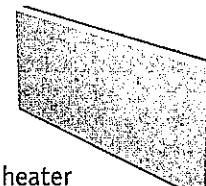
9 a clock radio



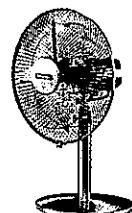
10 a DVD player



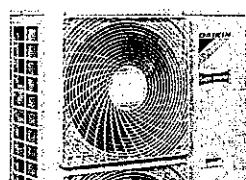
11 a light bulb



12 a heater



13 an electric fan



14 an air conditioner

2 61.2 Drill. Listen. Where are the things?



1 We're looking for a DVD player.
The DVD players are over there.

3 Where do you use the things in exercise 1?
Write them in the table.

living room	DVD player
kitchen	microwave
bathroom	
bedroom	

4 Complete the expressions with the verbs.

cook	do	lay	tidy
take out	clean		make

- _____ the beds
breakfast
- _____ the shopping
the washing-up
the ironing
- _____ the room
the garden
- _____ the windows
the car
- _____ the dinner
- _____ the table
- _____ the rubbish

Subject / object questions

Do you do the washing-up?
What jobs do you do in the house?
BUT
Who does the ironing?
Who makes the beds?

5a Look at the household jobs in exercise 4. Which ones do you do?

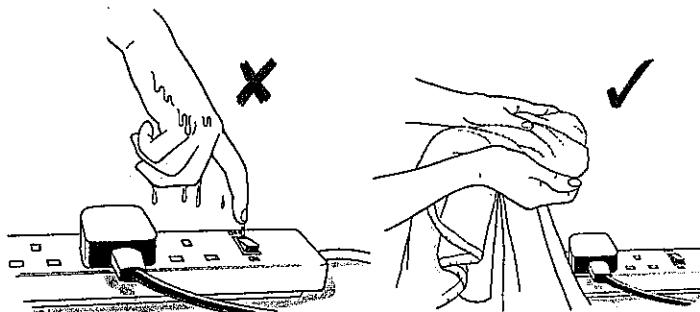
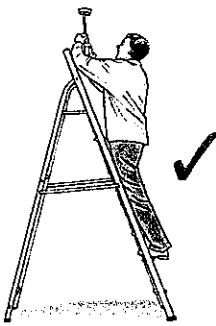
b Ask and answer with a partner.

Do you make the beds?
OR Who makes the beds in your house?

1 62.1 Read and listen.

SAFETY IN THE HOME

1 You shouldn't stand on a chair to reach things. You should use a stepladder.



2 You shouldn't touch electrical things with wet hands. You should dry your hands first.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

should/shouldn't

We use **should** and **shouldn't** + verb for advice.

You should use a stepladder. =

Use a stepladder.

It's safer.

You shouldn't stand on a chair. =

Don't stand on a chair.

It's dangerous.

NOT You shouldn't to use a stepladder.

3 Complete the sentences with **You should** or **You shouldn't**.

1 _____ put a lot of salt on your food.

2 _____ eat fruit and vegetables.

3 _____ do some exercise every day.

4 _____ smoke.

5 _____ drive when you're tired.

6 _____ laugh a lot.

7 _____ drink alcohol and drive.

8 _____ sleep for seven or eight hours a night.

4a Match the advice with the problems.

- 1 I'm very tired. e
- 2 I've got toothache. —
- 3 I feel ill. —
- 4 It's cold in here. —
- 5 I'm broke. —
- 6 It's raining. —
- 7 I've lost my wallet. —
- 8 The police stopped me today. —

- a Don't leave the window open.
- b Take an umbrella.
- c Don't go to work today.
- d Phone the police.
- e Go to bed.
- f Don't drive so fast.
- g Go to the dentist's.
- h Look for a job.

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

Use **You should** or **You shouldn't**.

A What's wrong?

B I'm very tired.

A You should go to bed.

5a Your life Write two pieces of advice for these things. Use **should/shouldn't**.

- a healthy life
- safety in the home
- saving money
- safety on the roads

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

English in the world

Warning signs

What are these signs in your language?



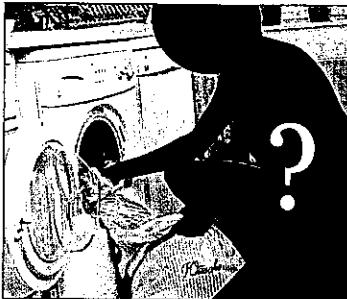
63 SKILLS

63.1 Read and listen to the text. Answer the questions.

- 1 Which country is it about?
- 2 What does the new law say?

I promise to love, honour, and wash up

Who does the housework? Who looks after children and old people?



In most couples it's probably 'the wife', but one country wants to change that. That country is Spain. At the moment, 40 per cent of Spanish men say that they don't do any housework. Their wives, however, spend six hours a day on it. In 2005 the Spanish Parliament passed a new law. Now husbands have to share jobs in the home.

In a café in Madrid we asked people about the law. Conchita Rodriguez: 'Most women go out to work. So, in my opinion, they shouldn't do all the housework too, but they usually do. That isn't fair.'

Juan Salgado: 'Yes, it's a good idea, but I think a lot of men already help in the house. I cook and I take the children to school, so it won't change anything for me and my wife.'

Laura Pino: 'I go out to work, but I prefer to do the

housework. I don't want my husband in the kitchen. He repairs the car and takes out the rubbish. I cook and clean. It's simple.'

Pablo Calvache is getting married soon: 'It's OK for women,' he says. 'They learn how to cook and iron when they're young, but we don't. I don't know how to do those things.'

Margarita Uria is a member of the Spanish Parliament. She produced the new law. She agrees. 'Men don't help in the house,' she says. 'But it isn't all their fault. We women should teach them when they're children.'

Will it work? Laura Pino doesn't think so: 'If the man doesn't help, what will his wife do – take him to the police station?'

But Conchita Rodriguez is more positive. 'It will probably happen slowly, but as more women go out to work, things must change.'

63.2 Are these statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Forty per cent of Spanish men help with the housework.
- 2 Married women in Spain spend six hours a day on housework.
- 3 The Spanish Parliament made the new law in 2005.
- 4 The people are in a café in Madrid.
- 5 They're all women.
- 6 All the people in the café think the law is a good idea.

63.3 Match two facts with each name.

Conchita Rodriguez d ____

Juan Salgado ____

Laura Pino ____

Pablo Calvache ____

Margarita Uria ____

a can't cook.

b doesn't want her husband's help with the cooking.

c introduced the new law.

d says it isn't right at the moment.

e thinks boys should learn how to cook.

f thinks the law won't change his life.

g doesn't think the law will work.

h will soon have a wife.

i says that he already does housework.

j doesn't think things will change quickly.

Language note Expressing opinions 3

In my opinion, ... It's a good idea.

I (don't) think that... I (don't) agree.

I (don't) think so.

63.4 Your life Think about the opinions in the text. Discuss with the class.

- 1 Which opinions do you agree with?
- 2 Is the Spanish law a good idea?
- 3 Do men and women share domestic jobs in your country?

63.5 Writing Use the text. Write a paragraph expressing your opinions.

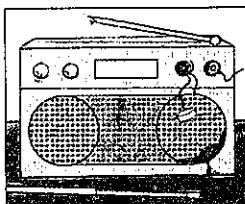
In my country, men and women ____.

I (don't) think the Spanish law is a good idea, because _____. I (don't) agree with _____. I think _____. I (don't) think the law will work, because _____.

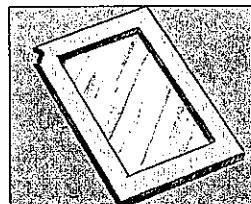
64

Describing faults

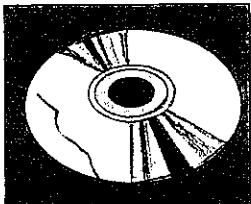
1 64.1 Listen and repeat.



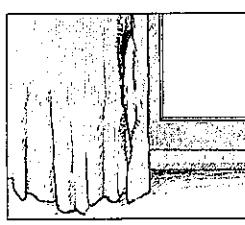
1 It isn't working.



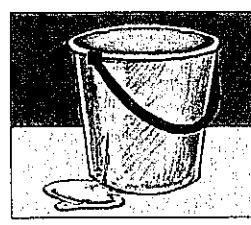
2 It's damaged.



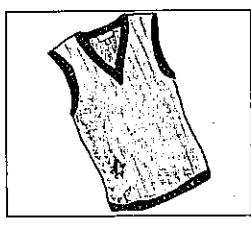
3 It's scratched.



4 It's torn.



5 It's leaking.



6 It's got a hole in it.

2a 64.2 Read and listen.



Assistant Hello. Can I help you?

Customer Yes, I bought this hairdryer yesterday, but it isn't working.

Assistant Oh, I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?

Customer Yes, please.

Assistant Just a moment. ... I'm sorry, we haven't got any more like that.

Customer Oh well, can I have a refund, then, please?

Assistant Yes, of course. Have you got the receipt?

Customer Yes. Here you are.

Assistant Thank you.

3 Complete the expressions.

Dealing with faults

I b_____ this hairdryer yesterday.

It isn't w_____.

I'm s_____ about that.

Would you like to e_____ it?

Can I have a r_____, please?

Have you got the r_____?

4a 64.3 Listen to four conversations.

Answer the questions each time.

1 What did he/she buy?

2 When did he/she buy it?

3 What's wrong with it?

4 Does he/she exchange it or get a refund?

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the information in exercise 4a.

Assistant Hello. Can I help you?

Customer Yes, I bought this jumper at the weekend, but it's got a hole in it.

5 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations for these situations.

1 You bought a camera. It isn't working.

2 You bought a saucepan. It's leaking.

3 You bought a toaster. It's scratched.

4 You bought a DVD player. It's damaged.

5 You bought a sheet. It's torn.

Pronunciation

Negative auxiliary verbs

1 64.4 Listen.

one syllable two syllables

won't shouldn't

2 Put the words in the correct column.

doesn't don't can't mustn't isn't
aren't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't

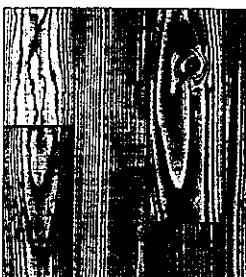
3 64.5 Listen, check, and repeat.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

65

VOCABULARY Materials

1 65.1 Listen and repeat.



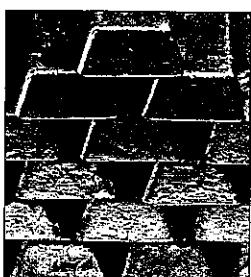
1 wood



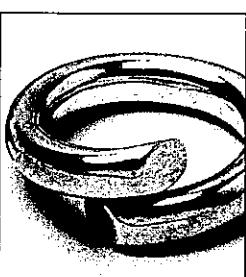
2 paper



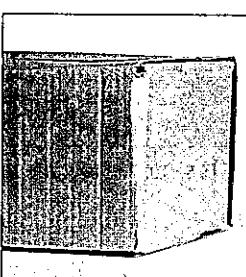
3 metal



4 gold



5 silver



6 cardboard



7 plastic



8 cotton



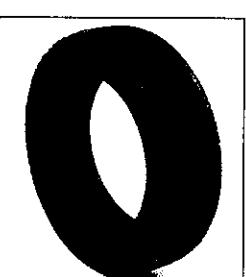
9 wool



10 glass



11 leather



12 rubber

What's that made of?
Is it made of glass?

No, it isn't. It's
made of plastic.



2 Think of something that is made of each material.

Pencils are made of wood.

Language file Word building 4

This belt is made of leather.

It's a leather belt.

BUT

a wooden toy (wood)

woollen gloves (wool)



3 65.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 These cups are made of paper.

They're paper cups.

2 This door is made of glass.

It's a glass door.

4 Describe some of the things around you.

- things that you're wearing

a silver watch

- things in your classroom

a wooden desk

- things in your bag, briefcase, or pockets

a leather purse

5 65.3 Listen. Which of the materials in exercise 1 does the man mention?



Language file Discuss these questions.

1 What things do you recycle?

2 Where do you take them?

3 Why should people recycle things?

Pronunciation

Sentence stress

65.4 Listen and repeat.

1 It's made of leather.

2 It's made of glass.

3 They're made of cotton.

4 It's made of gold.

5 They're made of metal.

Now listen and say what things are made of.

66

GRAMMAR

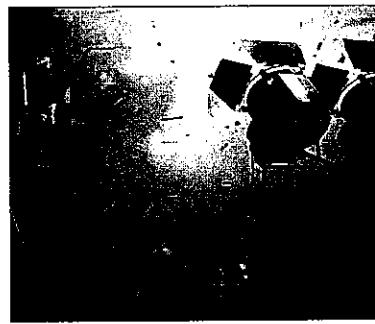
1 66.1 Read and listen.



Nick Kool makes models. He doesn't make them for a hobby. The models are made by Nick and his colleagues for TV programmes. Each model is built very carefully, but most of them are destroyed.

This street was seen in a history programme. Several models were needed for the programme. It took over four weeks to make each model, but they were destroyed in seconds.

'Everything is checked again and again,' says Nick. 'You don't get a second chance.'



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

PASSIVES

Active Nick makes the models.

Passive The models are made by Nick.

Active Nick checks a model again and again.

Passive A model is checked again and again by Nick.

Each pair of sentences has the same meaning.

3 Make sentences about Nick's work. Use the cues.

1 Photographs are studied.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Photographs/study | 5 An explosion/produce |
| 2 The models/plan | 6 The model/destroy |
| 3 The buildings/make | 7 The explosion/film |
| 4 They/paint | 8 The programme/see on TV |

4a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

PAST SIMPLE PASSIVE

We can use the passive in any tense.

Present

The model is checked very carefully.
The models are used in TV programmes.

Past

The model was checked very carefully.
The models were used in a TV
programme last year.

b Change the sentences in exercise 3 into the past tense.

1 Photographs were studied.

5a Nick is talking about one of the models. Put the verbs into the past simple passive.

The model in this picture ¹was built
(build) one sixth of normal size. I can't
show you the model, because it

²_____ (destroy) for a TV programme.

It ³_____ (make) from wood and paper.

The buildings and streets ⁴_____ (build)

first. Then the small things ⁵_____ (add).

Children's toys ⁶_____ (use) for things

like bicycles and plants. Shop signs ⁷_____

(paint) by hand. These small things are

very important. When the model

⁸_____ (see) on TV, people thought it

was real. The street ⁹_____ (use) in a

history programme. It ¹⁰_____ (show)

on TV last year.

b 66.2 Listen and check.

6a Speaking Answer the questions.

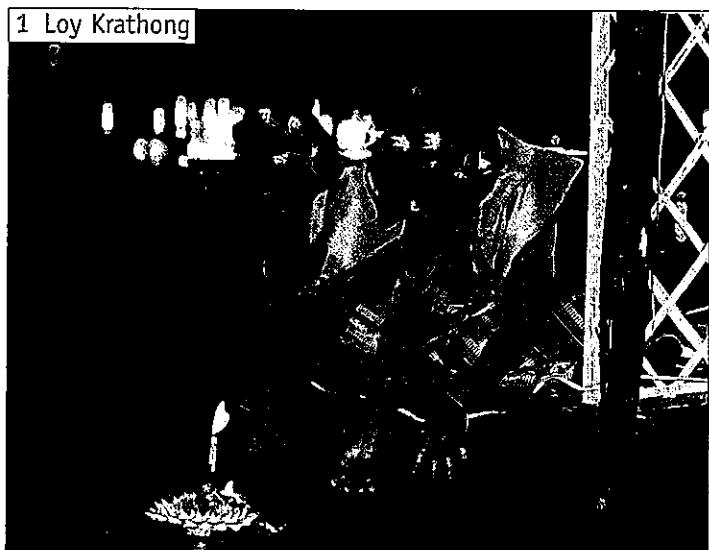
- 1 What things are produced in your country?
- 2 Are the things sold to other countries?
- 3 Where were your clothes made?
- 4 Where was your car/TV made?
- 5 Where were your shoes made?
- 6 Where was your watch made?

b Ask two people in your class. Compare their answers with yours.

Now I can ...
say how things are made.

- 1 67.1 Listen. Which country is each festival celebrated in?

1 Loy Krathong



2 The Day of the Dead



3 Maslenitsa



- 2 Listen again. Write the number of the festival with the correct answers. Some answers are not needed.

1 Why is each festival celebrated?

- to say thank you for the sun
- to remember dead friends and relatives
- to say goodbye to winter
- to celebrate the new year
- to say thank you for water

2 When is each festival celebrated?

- at the end of the rainy season
- on the second Sunday in November
- at the beginning of winter
- on 2 November
- at the end of winter

3a Answer these questions about each festival.

- 1 What do the people make?
- 2 What are the things made from?
- 3 What happens to the things?
- 4 Are any special kinds of food eaten?

b Listen again and check.

- 4 Writing Write about a festival in your country. Follow the pattern.

I'm from ____ (country). My favourite festival is ____ (name). It's celebrated ____ (when?). It's to ____ (why?). For the festival, ____ are made from _____. They are ____ (What do people do with the things?). People eat lots of ____ and they ____ (What things do they do?). I like ____ , because ____ (How do you feel about the festival?).

English in the world

Greetings cards

The average person in Britain sends 53 greetings cards every year. Most of them (85%) are bought by women. Cards are usually sent for:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| - birthdays | - anniversaries |
| - Christmas | - weddings |
| - Valentine's Day | - births |
| - Mother's Day | - deaths |
| - Father's Day | - passing exams. |

Compare this with your country.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 7 and 8. What happened?
- 2 **68.1** Read and listen to the story. Who must Peter, Sarah, and Jordan stop?
- 3 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who bought Peter's old offices?
 - 2 When was the factory sold?
 - 3 What other things did Starlight buy?
 - 4 What does Starlight want to do?
 - 5 Why do they need The Coffee Shop?
 - 6 Are Starlight going to open a new café?
 - 7 Who are Cindy and Ryan going to sell The Coffee Shop to?
 - 8 Who owns Starlight Properties?
 - 9 Why does Anna Harlow want The Coffee Shop?
 - 10 Where are Cindy and Ryan going?

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions

Responding to information

Yes, that's r_____.

Oh, I didn't k_____ that.

Are you s_____?

Yes, y_____ right.

That's t_____.

b Use the expressions. Complete the conversation.

A We've got an exam today.

B A_____?

A Yes, the teacher told us on Friday.

B Oh, _____. I wasn't here.

A Look, it's here in my notebook.

B Y_____. Is it on the passive?

A Y_____.

B Oh dear. And the passive isn't easy.

A T_____.

5 Language check. Underline examples of the passive in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Jordan Look at this map, Peter. Your old offices here were sold to Starlight Properties.

Peter Yes, that's right.

Sarah This factory and all the other properties in the block were sold last year, too.

Jordan And they were all bought by Starlight.

Peter Oh, I didn't know that.

Jordan Well, it was done very quietly.

Sarah Starlight wants to build a big shopping centre, it seems.

Peter Are you sure?

Jordan Yes, it's all here in the computer.

Peter I see. And now Starlight owns the whole block.

Sarah Except The Coffee Shop. And without The Coffee Shop, they can't build their shopping centre.



Peter But aren't Starlight going to open a new café?

Jordan No. They just said that so that Cindy and Ryan will sell The Coffee Shop.

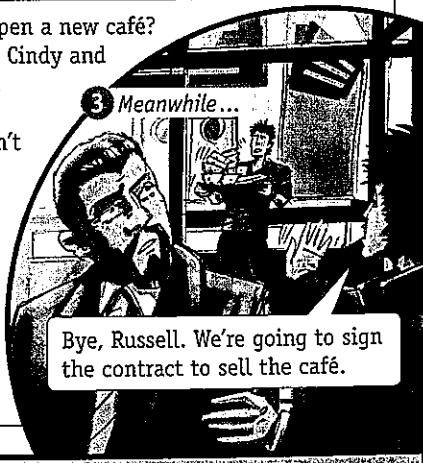
Sarah And it's worked.

Peter Yes, you're right. But they aren't selling it to Starlight. They're selling it to Anna Harlow.

Jordan That's true, but Starlight Properties is owned by Anna Harlow's family.

Sarah She doesn't want to open a shop. She's just buying the property for Starlight.

Peter Well, we must stop her!



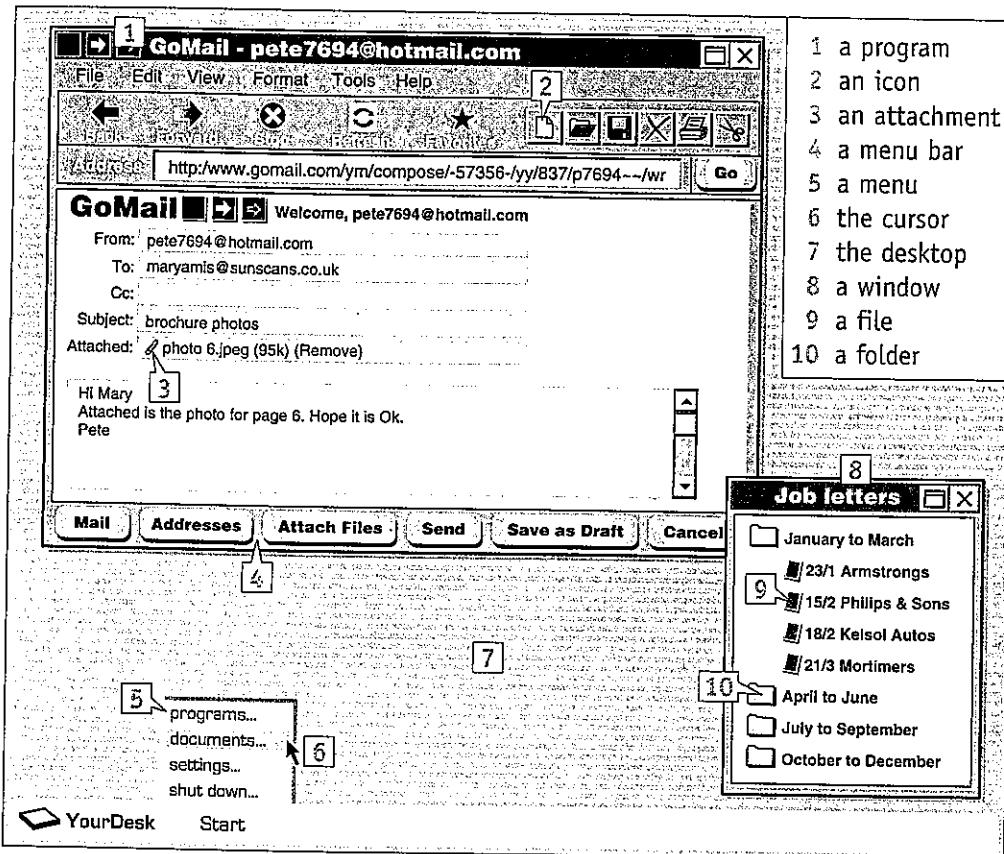
3 Meanwhile...

Bye, Russell. We're going to sign the contract to sell the café.

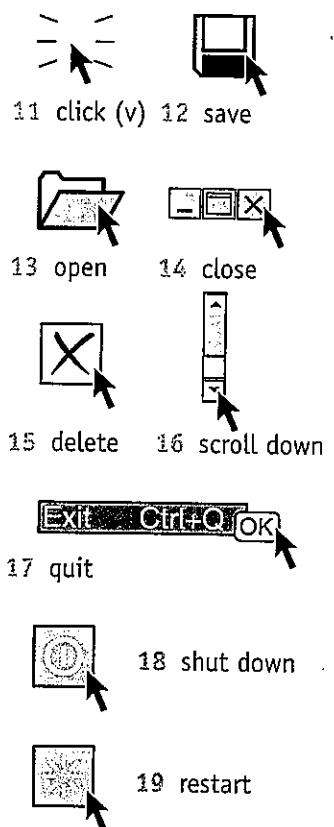
69

VOCABULARY Computers

69.1 Listen and repeat.



- 1 a program
- 2 an icon
- 3 an attachment
- 4 a menu bar
- 5 a menu
- 6 the cursor
- 7 the desktop
- 8 a window
- 9 a file
- 10 a folder



2 Complete the instructions with these verbs.

- 1 Save / Restart your work.
- 2 Scroll down / Quit the program.
- 3 Click on / Save the icon.
- 4 Delete / Shut down the file.
- 5 Save / Scroll down the menu.
- 6 Shut down / Close the computer.
- 7 Restart / Open the computer.

3 69.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

- 1 Click on the icon.
OK. I've clicked on the icon.
- 2 Quit that program.
OK. I've quit that program.

4 69.3 Listen. Someone is phoning a computer helpline. Number the words in the order that you hear them.

- file
 - menu bar
 - icon
 - restart
 - quit
- 1 desktop
 - window
 - save
 - program
 - scroll down

5 Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

- 1 What do you use computers for?
- 2 Do you like using computers?
- 3 How did you learn how to use a computer?
- 4 What kind of computer do you use?

English in the world

Website addresses

- 1 www.example.co.uk/time
We say: w, w, w, dot, example, dot, /kəʊ/, dot, u k, slash, time
- 2 Write down two website addresses. Say them to your partner.
- 3 What's your favourite website?

70 GRAMMAR

70.1 Read and listen.



Jordan I've fixed the computer which wasn't working.

Cindy Thanks, Jordan. Ryan! Where are the things that you bought from the supermarket?

Ryan They're in the car. I'll get them in a minute.

Cindy Oh, he's so slow.

Jordan You should read the article that's in the paper today. It's about people who do things slowly.

Cindy Really?

Jordan Yes, it says people who do things quickly make a lot of mistakes. People that are slow enjoy life – and are more successful.

Cindy Well, if that's true, I'm married to the most successful man in the world!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Relative clauses

1 Relative clauses give us more information about people and things.

I've fixed the computer.

I've fixed the computer which wasn't working.

It's about people.

It's about people who do things slowly.

2 A relative clause usually starts with a relative pronoun.

People who/that are slow enjoy life.

You should read the article which/that is in the paper.

3 Complete the sentences. Use *who* or *which*.

- 1 Where's the letter which arrived today?
- 2 That's one of the students _____ studies with Sarah.
- 3 Have you got the magazine _____ was on the table?
- 4 People _____ do things quickly don't enjoy life.
- 5 He's the man _____ fixes our computers.
- 6 Where's the photocopier _____ isn't working?
- 7 That's the film _____ was on TV last week.
- 8 Are they the people _____ go jogging with you?

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Relative clauses: subject and object

We can use a relative clause to join sentences.

Read the article. The article's in the newspaper.

Read the article that's in the newspaper (subject)

Where are the things? You bought the things.

Where are the things that you bought? (object)

5a Join the sentences. Use *that*.

- 1 This is the TV that isn't working.
- 1 This is the TV. The TV isn't working.
- 2 Save the files. You need the files.
- 3 This is the car. I want to buy the car.
- 4 This is the icon. You click on the icon.
- 5 He's the man. I saw the man yesterday.
- 6 She's the woman. The woman phoned.

b Change the sentences. Use *who* or *which*.

6a Your life Write down these things.

- 1 someone who you admire
- 2 a kind of food which you really like
- 3 a film that you've seen recently
- 4 something that you really want to do
- 5 a book that you want to read
- 6 a person who has changed your life

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

Now I can ... give further information about people and things.

71 SKILLS

71.1 Read and listen. Why do people use Internet dating?

Tick ✓ the reasons mentioned.

- You meet people from other countries.
- You meet a lot of people.
- You always see a photograph of the person.
- You learn something about the person before you meet.



Love online

The Internet is changing our love lives. Millions of single men and women now find a date online.

Websites aren't all the same, so you must choose the website that's best for you. A site that has a lot of young city professionals won't be very good for a middle-aged person who lives in the suburbs and likes gardening.

When you've chosen your website, you must write a good profile of yourself. Here are some ideas that can help:

- 1 Attach a photograph. A lot of people, especially men, won't click on a profile that hasn't got a photograph. Don't use a photo that's over five years old, and don't use one that shows you:
 - in sunglasses
 - in a swimsuit
 - or with an ex-partner.
- 2 Be honest. Don't say that you're a tall, handsome businessman if you're a short, ordinary-looking guy who works in an office. If you do, your first date will probably be your last.
- 3 Be exact. You'll find someone who likes the same things more easily. Don't write 'I like going to the cinema.' Everybody does. Write about films that you like or a film that you've seen recently.
- 4 Be positive. People don't want to read about the things that you don't like. Write about the things, people, and places that you do like.

People use the Internet because they can meet thousands of people. They can also learn something about the other person before they meet. Will the Internet find your Mr or Ms Right?

71.2 Match the reasons with the advice.

1 Choose the right website, because ...

2 Attach a photograph, because ...

3 Be honest, because ...

4 Be exact, because ...

5 Be positive, because ...

a some people won't read your profile if you don't.

b if not, you might not get another date.

c they are all different.

d people prefer reading about things that you like.

e you're more likely to find someone who has similar interests.

71.3 Read these Internet dating entries.

What mistakes are these people making?

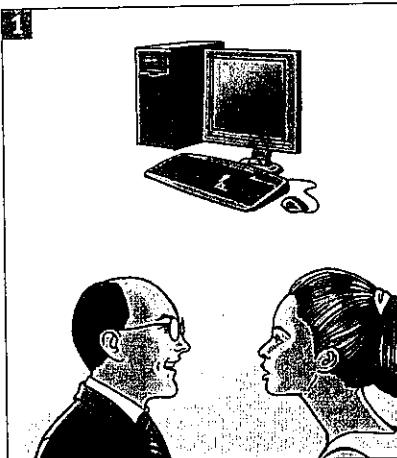
www.husbandandwife.com

- 1 I hate going to parties and I can't stand people who talk a lot.
- 2 I love listening to music and watching TV.
- 3 I drive a Ferrari and I often have lunch with Madonna.
- 4 Hi. My name's Fiona and I love sport. (No photo attached.)
- 5 I'm not looking for someone who wants to get married.
- 6 Here's a photo of me with my ex-wife.

71.4 Your life Write your profile. Use the model below. Change the words in bold.

I'm Owen. I'm 35 and I'm from Cardiff in South Wales. I'm a psychologist and I work in a hospital. I'm medium height and quite slim. I've got blue eyes and blond hair. I like walking. Most weekends I go walking in the mountains. I like people who are active and sporty. I'm looking for someone who wants to share my outdoor activities.

1 72.1 Read and listen.



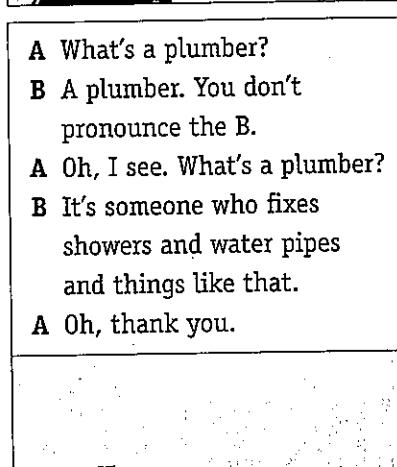
A On a computer, what do you call the thing which you look at?

B The screen.

A Screen? How do you spell that?

B It's S-C-R-double E-N.

A Oh, OK. Thanks.



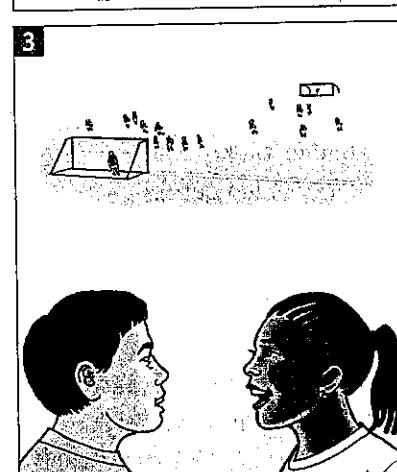
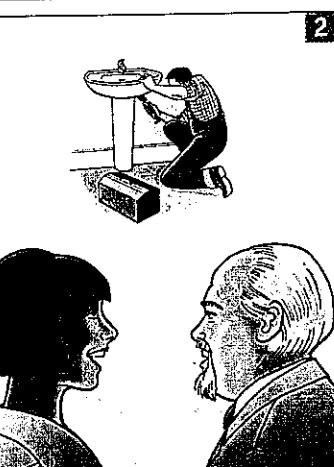
A What's a plumber?

B A plumber. You don't pronounce the B.

A Oh, I see. What's a plumber?

B It's someone who fixes showers and water pipes and things like that.

A Oh, thank you.



A What do you call the place where you play football?

B Do you mean a stadium?

A No, the thing that the players play on.

B Oh, the pitch. It's a football pitch.

A Thank you.

2 Complete the expressions with these words.

mean what call how

BY GIVE ME QUESTIONS Asking what things are called

What do you ____ ... ?
____'s a plumber?

____ do you spell that?
Do you ____ a stadium?

3 72.2 Listen. Katrin is staying in England. Choose the correct answers.

1 What does she want?

- a a plug
- b an adaptor
- c a hairdryer

2 What does her brother do?

- a a salesman
- b a builder
- c a civil engineer

3 What does she ask about?

- a keys
- b a screensaver
- c a keyboard

Definitions

It's someone who / that fixes showers.

It's something which / that you eat.

It's a place where you play football.

4a Speaking Choose an example of each one of these:

- a job
- a place
- something in a kitchen
- something that you wear
- a family relation
- an electrical appliance.

b Describe the things to a partner. He / She must guess what it is.

A What do you call someone who cooks?

B Do you mean a cook?

A No. This is someone who works ...

Pronunciation

/s/ or /z/

1 72.3 Listen.

/s/

/z/

person

choose

2a Put the words in the correct column.

possible thousand cursor
salesman positive website
screensaver businessman

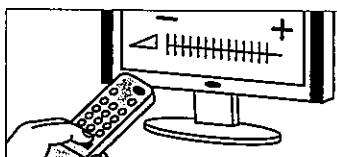
b 72.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

Now you can ... ask another question if you know the name of ...

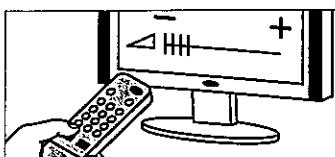
73

VOCABULARY Phrasal verbs

73.1 Listen and repeat.



1 turn up



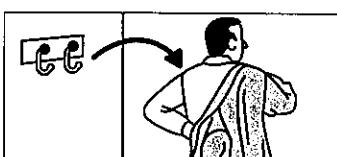
2 turn down



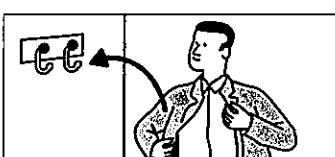
3 go away



4 come back



5 put on



6 take off



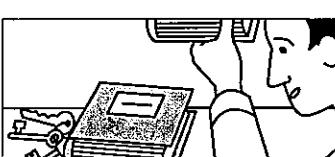
7 come in



8 go out



9 try on



10 look for



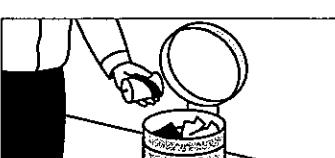
11 look after



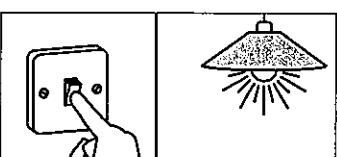
12 break down



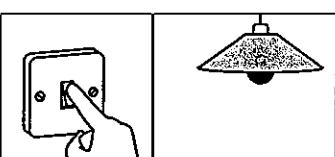
13 get up



14 throw away



15 switch on



16 switch off

73.2 Drill. Listen. Say the opposite.

- 1 Turn up the TV.
No. Turn down the TV.

3 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Phrasal verbs

1 verb	particle
get	up
come	in

2 With some verbs the two parts show the meaning.

look + up = look up



look + down = look down



look + back = look back



3 With some verbs you can't see the meaning from the two parts.



look after



break down

4 73.3 Listen. There are two verbs in each conversation. Number them.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| look after | go out |
| switch off | sit down <u>1</u> |
| stand up | look for |
| put on | go away |
| come in <u>1</u> | switch on |

5 **You're right!** Ask and answer with a partner.

- What time do you get up at weekends?
- How often do you go out with your friends?
- Do you look after anyone?
- What do you take off first when you get home?
- What was the last thing that you threw away?
- What things do you often have to look for?
- What time do you normally switch off the TV in the evening?
- What clothes do you always try on before you buy them?

74 GRAMMAR

74.1 Read and listen.



Lucy Lovely to see you again, Alma. I haven't seen you since your 21st birthday party. Do you still live in London?

Alma No, I don't. I lived here for a few years after college, but then I moved to York.

Lucy Are you married?

Alma Yes, I am. I've been married since last February.

Lucy Congratulations. How long have you lived in York?

Alma Oh, I've lived there for nearly three years now.

Lucy Do you remember that guy who was studying Engineering? Oh, what was his name? Ben Driver. Wasn't he from York?

Alma Yes, he was. I ...

Lucy He was so boring! I haven't seen him since we left college.

Alma I have. I saw him this morning actually. He's my husband!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

For + a period of time / since + a point of time

1 I've lived there for six years. = I still live there now.
I lived there for five years. = I don't live there now.

2 **for** + a period of time **for** three years
since + a point of time **since** last February

3 Write **for** or **since**.

- 1 We've been here since yesterday.
- 2 I've worked here for two weeks.
- 3 They've been married since 1995.
- 4 We haven't seen each other for ages.
- 5 She's been away for five days.
- 6 I've had a headache since this morning.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 I've been at work since eight o'clock, but I'm going to leave soon. (be)
- 2 We were on holiday last week. (be)
- 3 I waited at the restaurant for an hour, but then I left. (wait)
- 4 We must get a new car. We had this one for ten years. (have)
- 5 I'm a vegetarian. I haven't eaten meat since I was a teenager. (not eat)
- 6 I smoked for nearly twenty years, but I stopped last year. (smoke)

5 74.2 Listen. Tick ✓ the correct sentence.

- 1 a She works there now. ✓
b She doesn't work there now.
- 2 a He's a policeman.
b He isn't a policeman.
- 3 a They're married.
b They aren't married.
- 4 a They still live in France.
b They don't live in France now.
- 5 a She works at the bank.
b She doesn't work at the bank.

6 Writing Complete the sentences.

- 1 I live in _____. _____.
- 2 I've lived there for / since _____. _____.
- 3 I'm a _____. (job) _____.
- 4 I've been a _____. for / since _____. _____.
- 5 I work / study in / at _____. _____.
- 6 I've worked / studied there for / since _____. _____.
- 7 In my free time, I _____. _____.
- 8 I've played / done for / since _____. _____.
- 9 My parents have been / were married for / since _____. _____.

Pronunciation

Vowel sounds

74.3 Listen. Choose the odd one out.

- 1 down out throw
- 2 back take break
- 3 look up put
- 4 there here year
- 5 was saw off
- 6 find sit since
- 7 turn work fork
- 8 won gone done

Now I can ... talk about past activities that continue to the present.

75 SKILLS

- 1 **75.1 Listen.** Paul and Helen are at a university reunion. Answer the questions.

- 1 Which person ...
 - has worked for the same company since university?
 - has had a lot of different jobs?
- 2 Who are Troy and Georgina?



- 2a Write Paul (P) or Helen (H).

- 1 H is divorced.
- 2 P is married.
- 3 has travelled a lot.
- 4 has got three children.
- 5 lives in Manchester.
- 6 worked for an insurance company.
- 7 lives in London.
- 8 shares a flat with a friend.
- 9 lives in a house in the suburbs.
- 10 works for a computer company.
- 11 works for a bank.
- 12 was a singer in a band.

- b Listen again. Check your ideas.

- 3a Paul and Helen mention these periods of time. Why?

- six months
- a couple of years
- three years
- four years
- nine years

- b Listen again. Check your ideas.

- 4 What do Paul and Helen think about each other's life?

- 5a Speaking You've met an old friend after 15 years. Think about your answers to these questions.

- 1 What do you do?
- 2 How long have you been a ... ?
- 3 Where do you live/work?
- 4 How long have you lived/worked there?
- 5 Where did you live/work before?
- 6 How long did you live/work there?
- 7 Are you married?
- 8 How long have you been married?
- 9 Have you got any children?
- 10 What do you do in your free time?
- 11 How long have you done ... /played ... ?

- b Work with a partner. Make the conversation. Use the questions.

English in the world Reunions

Universities and some schools in Britain and the USA usually have reunions for their former students. They often have a magazine, too, with news of former students' lives.

Reunions are big events in the USA. They are normally used to raise money for the university or school.

Now there are websites, too, where people can find old friends.



Compare this with your country.

1 Look back at Episodes 8 and 9. What happened?

2 76.1 Read and listen to the story.

- 1 Where are Ryan and Cindy going? Why?
- 2 Does Sarah speak to Ryan or Cindy?

3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Russell hasn't put any petrol in the car.
- 2 Someone answers the phone at The Coffee Shop.
- 3 Russell is using Ryan's mobile.
- 4 Cindy hasn't got her mobile with her.
- 5 Russell knows the solicitor's name.
- 6 The solicitor's office isn't near the café.
- 7 Anna Harlow is at The Coffee Shop.
- 8 Russell saw Anna three days ago.

4a Complete the expressions.

Useful expressions: Telephoning

There's _____ reply.

I'll _____ his mobile.

It _____ ringing.

She hasn't got her phone _____ her.

It's re-_____.

Don't hang _____.

b Complete the sentences. Use the expressions.

- 1 Oh, wait, one more thing ... just a minute - _____.
- 2 I can't phone her, because _____.
- 3 There's no reply from his office, so _____.
- 4 _____, but nobody's answering it.
- 5 I've tried to phone them, but _____.
- 6 I haven't got my mobile with me because _____.

5 Language check. Underline examples of the present perfect in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Ryan Oh no! Russell hasn't put any petrol in the car again!

We haven't used it since Monday and it's nearly empty.

Cindy Well, we can get some petrol on the way.



Peter There's no reply at The Coffee Shop.

Sarah I'll try Ryan's mobile. ... It's ringing. Hello, Ryan. It's Sarah. I ...

Russell Hi, Sarah. This is Russell. I've borrowed Dad's mobile.

Sarah Oh, well. Is your dad there?

Russell No. Mum and Dad have gone to the solicitor's. They're going to sign the contract to sell this place.

Sarah Oh, OK. I'll try your mum's mobile.

Russell Actually, she hasn't got her phone with her. It's re-charging here.

Sarah Oh, no! ... Oh, don't hang up, Russell! Here's Jordan.

Jordan Russell, do you know the name of your parents' solicitor?

Russell No, sorry, but it isn't near here, because they've gone in the car.

Jordan What about Anna? Is she there?

Russell Anna? No, I haven't seen her for two weeks. Look. I must go. There are customers in the café. Bye.



It's too late. They're going to sell The Coffee Shop!

77

VOCABULARY
Feelings

1 77.1 Listen and repeat.



1 tired



2 hungry



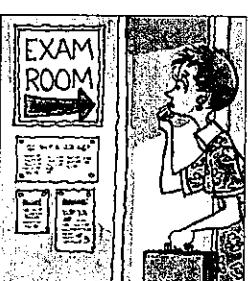
3 thirsty



4 bored



5 interested



6 worried



7 annoyed



8 excited



9 relaxed



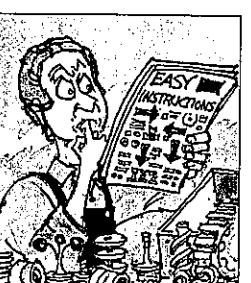
10 embarrassed



11 frightened



12 surprised



13 confused



14 miserable



15 proud

2a 77.2 Listen. How does Mark feel each time?

1 worried

b Listen again. Match the reasons with the feelings from exercise 2a.

1 worried - d

a There's nothing on TV.

b He was at a party last night.

c He's had a day off.

d He's got an interview tomorrow.

e He's not sure about the meeting date.

f His son won a school prize.

g He didn't have any lunch.

h His laptop isn't working.

-ed / -ing adjectives

I don't like this film. I'm **bored**.The film is **boring**.I like this book. I'm **interested**.The book is **interesting**.

3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 There's a very **interested** / **interesting** article in the newspaper today.2 I'm **bored** / **boring**. I've got nothing to do.3 You should go to bed. You look **tired** / **tiring**.4 That's very **annoyed** / **annoying**. There's a car in my parking space.5 This horror film is **frightened** / **frightening**.6 I forgot the Managing Director's name. It was very **embarrassed** / **embarrassing**.7 He's **excited** / **exciting**. He's got a new job.8 I don't understand these instructions. They're very **confused** / **confusing**.4a **Speaking** Give an example of a person, place, or thing for each of these words.1 I think sport is **interesting**.

1 interesting 5 exciting

2 boring 6 frightening

3 annoying 7 confusing

4 relaxing 8 surprising

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

5 Write six sentences about yourself.

I feel/felt **embarrassed** when ...

1 78.1 Read and listen.



If your house was on fire, you'd get out quickly. However, you'd probably take some things, too. What would you take with you? An insurance company asked people this question. Most men, it seems, would look for something valuable, like their wallet, computer, or CD collection.

Most women, however, would save personal things. 'I wouldn't save my purse,' said one woman. 'You can replace things like that. I'd take things that you can't buy like family photographs. I'd save a pet first if we had one.'

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 114.

would - verb

1 We use the conditional form with *would* for imaginary or unlikely events.

2 Most people would get out quickly.

I'd save the pet.

Most women would not take the TV.

He wouldn't take the family photos.

3 Would you save your credit cards? Yes, I would.

No, I wouldn't.

Why would you take that?

3a What would you save? Choose your top five things.

I'd save my books. OR I wouldn't save a computer.

- books
- a pet
- a computer
- jewellery
- family photos
- documents and certificates
- your wallet or purse
- a CD collection
- clothes
- your mobile phone

b Ask and answer with a partner. Ask for reasons.

A Would you save your books?

B Yes, I would./No, I wouldn't.

A Why would/wouldn't you save them?

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 114.

Second conditional

1 We use *would* in a second conditional sentence for imaginary or unreal conditions.

If their house was on fire, most people would get out quickly.

OR

Most people would get out quickly if their house was on fire.

2 We use:

- the past simple in the *if* clause.
- the conditional with *would* in the main clause.

NOT If their house would be on fire, most people would get out quickly.

5 Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple or conditional form.

1 If I had (have) a year off, I'd travel (travel) round the world.

2 If I find (find) a mobile phone, I not use (not use) it.

3 I learn (learn) another language if I have (have) more time.

4 If someone steal (steal) my mobile phone, I contact (contact) the police.

5 I stay (stay) in bed if it be (be) Sunday today.

6 If we not have (not have) an exam tomorrow, I come (come) with you.

6a Speaking What would you do in these situations? Complete the sentences.

1 If I had two extra hours a day, ____.

2 If I found someone's mobile, ____.

3 If I was the boss/headteacher, ____.

4 If I travelled back in time, ____.

5 If I had a year off, ____.

b Ask and answer with a partner.

A What would you do if you had two extra hours a day?

B I'd ...

A Why would you do that?

B Because ...

Now I can ...

talk about imaginary or unlikely events.

79 SKILLS

- 1 **79.1** Read and listen to the text. What is the answer to the question in the title?



If you won the lottery, what would you do with the money? Would you buy a big house, a yacht perhaps, or a fast, expensive sports car? We all dream of buying these things, but would they make us happier?

'No, they wouldn't,' says Rupert Sweeney. He works for a large bank and has studied the psychology of money. 'If you bought a new sports car', he says, 'it would be good at first. Then after a while it wouldn't be new and interesting. It would become normal. So then what would you do? You'd want a faster car or a more expensive one. So in the end your nice sports car would make you unhappy, because you'd always want something better.'



HAVING THIS?

Material things like cars, watches, houses, and clothes only make you happy for a while. We're all a lot richer than we were in the 1950s, but we aren't happier. The things that will really make you happy are:

- doing things that you enjoy and;
- spending time with people that you like.

If you won a lot of money, what should you spend it on then? 'Experiences,' says Rupert Sweeney. 'Learn something new, like water-skiing. Do something that you've always wanted to do. Eat at a five-star restaurant. Visit places that you've never been to. Every experience is special, and experiences get better with time, because we forget the bad things in life. And if you share the experiences with your family and friends, you'll enjoy them again and again with photos, videos, and memories.'

So, if that big cheque ever arrives, forget the fast car and the designer clothes. Book those skydiving lessons for yourself and your friends.

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where does Rupert Sweeney work?
- 2 What has he studied?
- 3 Why do material things only make us happy for a while?
- 4 What are the things that really make us happy?
- 5 Why do experiences get better with time?
- 6 How can you enjoy experiences again and again?

3 What examples does the article give of ... ?

- material things
- experiences

Learn more: Time expressions

at first	in the end
then	for a (short) while
after a while	again and again

4 Do you agree with the writer? Why? Why not?

5 Your life Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

If you won a lot of money, ...

- what things would you buy?
- what activities would you do?
- what new things would you learn?
- what places would you visit?

Who would you do these things with?

Why would you do these things?

Pronunciation

How many syllables?

1 79.2 Listen. How many syllables are there: 1, 2, 3, or 4?

relaxed interesting psychology bored
material worried tired embarrassed
frightened experience miserable clothes

2 79.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

80

A thank-you note

1 80.1 Read and listen.

1

18 July

Dear Victoria

Just a note to say thank you for the lovely birthday card and present that you sent. I started the book yesterday and it's very exciting.

I hope you're well.

Love,

Charlotte

2

To: sandrasif36@abc.com

Subject: Thank you

Dear Sandra and Asif

I'm just writing to say thank you for the great party at your place on Saturday. I really enjoyed the evening. The food was delicious and I met some very interesting people.

Hope to see you soon.

All the best,

Mack

4 Complete the expressions.

Saying thank you

Introduction

Just a _____ to say ...

I'm just _____ to say ...

Message

Thank you _____ dinner/the present.

Ending

I hope you're _____.

Hope to see _____ soon.

Signing off

Love,

All _____ best,

Best wishes,

5 Complete the thank-you note.

¹ _____ Mario and Silvia

² _____ to ³ _____

the very nice weekend that I spent with you and your family in Milan. ⁴ _____ the weekend, and thought your house was beautiful. ⁵ _____

⁶ _____

Andy

2 Read the notes again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who had a birthday recently?
- 2 Who sent her a present?
- 3 What else did she send?
- 4 What was the present?
- 5 Who went to a party?
- 6 Where was the party?
- 7 When was it?
- 8 Was there any food at the party?

3 What do the people describe with these words?

- 1 lovely
- 2 exciting
- 3 great
- 4 delicious
- 5 interesting

6 Writing Write thank-you notes/emails for these situations:

- a friend took you for lunch last week
- someone sent you a CD for your birthday.

English in the world

Parties



At a party in an English-speaking country, the hosts normally provide drinks, but guests often bring a bottle of wine, too. There are usually snacks, such as peanuts and crisps. Sometimes there is food, too. It's normally a buffet. People usually stand up at parties in small groups.

New! Create
Write a thank-you note

ENGLISH FOR EVERYDAY LIFE
That's Life! Epilogue

- 1 Look back at Episode 10. What happened?
- 2 **81.1** Read and listen to the story.
- 3a What do you think happened at the solicitor's?
- b **81.2** Listen and check your ideas.



Lucy Hi, everyone!
Jordan Hello, Lucy. You're early.
Lucy Yes. I had the afternoon off. Hey. What's wrong?
Why is everyone so sad?
Peter Sit down, Lucy. We'll tell you all about it.



Jordan So Ryan and Cindy have gone to the solicitor's to sell The Coffee Shop.
Lucy Well, why didn't you phone me? I know their solicitor. The phone number's on the board over there.
Sarah Come on, then. Let's phone them.
Peter But it's already ten past five. They've probably gone home now.
Lucy Yes, you're right. There's no reply.



Peter Would anyone like another cup of coffee?
Sarah Not for me, thanks. I must go.
Lucy Oh, just a minute. Here are Ryan and Cindy.
Jordan They don't look very happy.



Ryan Where's that stupid boy? I'll kill him!
Cindy Calm down, Ryan.
Ryan Calm down? It's all his fault!
Russell Hi, Mum, Dad. Look. I'm really sorry. I didn't know.
Sarah It's true, Ryan. Russell didn't know anything about Anna and Starlight Properties.

STUDY AND REFERENCE SECTION

REVIEW AND WORDLISTS

Lessons 1–8	page 83
Lessons 9–16	page 85
Lessons 17–24	page 87
Lessons 25–32	page 89
Lessons 33–40	page 91
Lessons 41–48	page 93
Lessons 49–56	page 95
Lessons 57–64	page 97
Lessons 65–72	page 99
Lessons 73–80	page 101

GRAMMAR REFERENCE

page 103

AUDIO SCRIPTS

page 115

IRREGULAR VERB LIST

page 123

PRONUNCIATION CHART

page 124

Review 1-8

Vocabulary

1 Complete the conversation.

there where Japan pleased
from know in name's

- A Hi, my ¹name's Mika.
 B ²_____ to meet you, Mika. I'm Jorge.
 A ³_____ are you from, Jorge?
 B I'm ⁴_____ Argentina. And you?
 A I'm from ⁵_____.
 B Oh, really? Whereabouts ⁶_____ Japan?
 A Osaka. Do you ⁷_____ it?
 B Yes, I do. I was ⁸_____ last year.

2 Write four jobs and four work places.

Jobs	Places
a nurse	a salon

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Gardeners work _____ | a a uniform. |
| 2 He wears _____ | b a computer. |
| 3 We do shift _____ | c work. |
| 4 I use _____ | d outdoors. |

Grammar

4a Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Where were you born?
- 1 were you where born ?
- 2 what name your 's ?
- 3 live in London you do ?
- 4 you got have a brother ?
- 5 you single are ?

b Answer the questions.

5a Complete the sentences. Use the present simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I live near the school. (live)
- 2 They work in a factory. (work)
- 3 She likes him. (like)
- 4 He has got two sisters. (have got)
- 5 We usually work at 9 a.m. (start)

b Make the sentences negative.

- 1 I don't live near the school.

Skills

6a Read the text and complete the form.



My name's Omar Hamed and I'm from Egypt. I'm an engineer in Cairo and my wife is a doctor. We've got three children.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Title: <u>Mr</u> | 5 Occupation: _____ |
| 2 First name: _____ | 6 Marital status: _____ |
| 3 Surname: _____ | 7 No. of dependants: _____ |
| 4 Nationality: _____ | |

b Copy the form. Write your personal details.

7 Read the text. Tick ✓ or correct the sentences.

Brigitta Pataki is Hungarian. She works at a radio station in Canada. She starts work at 4.00 p.m. and finishes at 12.00 p.m. Brigitta likes her job, but there are some problems. She works six days a week and she can never go out in the evening.

- 1 Brigitta is from Hungary.
- 1 Brigitta is from Canada.
- 2 She works at a radio station.
- 3 She works in the morning.
- 4 Her shift is eight hours.
- 5 She has two days off a week.

Listening

8 Choose the correct word.

- 1 How are/is you?
- 2 Are you busy in/at the moment?
- 3 How are/is Marco?
- 4 Is/Are he busy?

9 Write the missing months.

January, _____, March, _____, May, _____,
 July, _____, September, _____, November, _____

10 Complete the conversation.

- A ¹Hello, Mill Dental Practice.
- B Hello, I've got an appointment ^{2o} on 4 May.
- A What ^{3t} is your appointment?
- B It's at 4:30, but I'm afraid I ^{4c} 'll make it.
- A Would you like to ^{5m} make another appointment?
- B Yes, ^{6p} please.
- A Can you ^{7c} come on 7 May at 3.30?
- B Yes, that's ^{8f} fine.

Wordlist 1–8

1	country Brazil (n) Canada (n) Italy (n) Poland (n) nationality American (adj) Brazilian (adj) Canadian (adj) Chinese (adj) Egyptian (adj) French (adj) Greek (adj) Irish (adj) Japanese (adj) Polish (adj) Russian (adj) Spanish (adj) I'm from ... (exp) My name's ... (exp) whereabouts (adv)	/'kʌntri/ /brə'zil/ /'kænədə/ /'ɪtli/ /'pəʊlənd/ ,næʃə'næləti/ /ə'merɪ,kən/ /brə'zɪən/ /kə'neɪdiən/ /tʃar'niz/ /i'dʒipʃn/ /frentʃ/ /grɪ:k/ /ərɪʃ/ /dʒæpə'niz/ /pəʊliʃ/ /'rʌʃn/ /'spænɪʃ/ /a:m frəm/ /mar neimz/ ,weə're'bauts/
2	be born (v) birthday (n) free time (n) last name (n) live (v) married (adj) near (prep)	/bi: 'bɔ:n/ /'bɛ:θdeɪ/ /fri: 'taɪm/ /la:st neɪm/ /lɪv/ /'mærɪd/ /nɪə(r)/
3	personal details (n) surname title (n) marital status (n) divorced (adj) single (adj) separated (adj) widowed (adj) gender (n) female (adj) male (adj) date of birth (n) dependant (n) no. (abbrev = number) occupation (n) contact details (n)	/'pə:sənl ,dɪ:tɪlz/ /'sɜ:nneɪm/ /'taɪtl/ /'mærɪtl ,stɪ:təs/ /dr've:st/ /'singl/ /'sepəreɪtɪd/ /'wɪdəud/ /dʒendə(r)/ /fi:meɪl/ /meɪl/ /deɪt əv 'bə:θ/ /dr'pendənt/ /'nʌmbər/ /,ɒkjju'peɪʃn/ /'kɒntækt ,dɪ:tɪlz/
4	at the moment (adv) busy (adj) these days (exp) actor (n) advertising agency (n) computer engineer (n) magazine company (n) personal assistant (n)	/æt ðə 'məʊmənt/ /'brɪzi/ /'ðɪz dɛɪz/ /'ækta(r)/ /əd've:təzɪŋ ,erdʒ(ə)nzi/ /kəm'pjʊtə(r),endʒm'ɪə(r)/ /mægə'zɪ:n ,kʌmpəni/ /'pə:sənl ə'sist(ə)nt/
5	artist (n) electrician (n) flight attendant (n) gardener (n) hairdresser (n) lorry driver (n) plumber (n) police officer (n) factory (n) hotel (n) studio (n) salon (n) do shift work (v) look after people (v) repair things (v) use a computer (v) wear a uniform (v) work outdoors (v)	/'ɑ:tɪst/ /ɪ,lek'trɪʃn/ /'flaɪt ə,tendənt/ /'ga:dner(r)/ /'heədresə(r)/ /'lɔri ,drarvə(r)/ /'plʌmə(r)/ /pə'lis ,pʃɪsə(r)/ /'fæktri/ /həʊ'tel/ /'stju:dɪəʊ/ /'sælon/ /du: 'ʃɪft ,wə:k/ /luk 'a:ftə ,pi:pl/ /ri'peə(r) ,θɪŋz/ /ju:z ə kəm'pjʊ:tə(r)/ /weə(r) ə 'jʊ:nɪ,fɔ:rm/ /wɜ:k əʊt'dɔ:z/
6	at night (adv) during the day (adv) every day (adv) normally (adv) often (adv) usually (adv) finish work (v) get home (v) go to bed (v) gorgeous (adj) have a meal (v) old people's home (n) start work (v) What does she do? (exp)	/æt naɪt/ /dʒuərn̩ ðə 'deɪ/ /evri 'deɪ/ /'nɔ:məli/ /'ɒfn/ /'ju:zueli/ /fɪnɪʃ 'wɜ:k/ /get 'həʊm/ /gəʊ tə 'bed/ /'gɔ:dʒəs/ /hæv ə 'mi:l/ /əʊld 'pi:plz ,həʊm/ /stɑ:t 'wɜ:k/ /wɒt dəz ði 'du:/
7	all the time (adv) always (adv) never (adv) rarely (adv) sometimes (adv) electrical engineer (n) workplace (n) oil rig (n) power station (n) day shift (n) get seasick (v) night shift (n) on duty telephone banking (n) working hours (n pl)	/ɔ:l ðə 'taɪm/ /'ɔ:lweɪz/ /'nevə(r)/ /'reəli/ /'sʌəmtaɪmz/ /ɪ,lektrɪkl endʒm'ɪə(r)/ /'wɜ:kpleɪs/ /'ɔ:l rig/ /'paʊə(r) ,steɪʃn/ /'deɪ ſɪft/ /get 'sɪ:sɪk/ /'naɪt ſɪft/ /on 'djʊti/ /'telɪfəʊn ,bæŋkɪŋ/ /'wɜ:kɪŋ əʊəz/
8	I can't make that. (exp) afternoon (n) appointment (n) dental practice (n) interview (n)	/aɪ ka:n't 'merk ðæt/ /a:ftə'nu:n/ /ə'poɪntmənt/ /'dentl ,præktsɪ/ /'ɪntəvju:z/

Review 9–16

Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct verb for each collocation.

- 1 They *go/make* shopping on Sunday.
- 2 I *do/have* a shower in the evening.
- 3 He always *goes/gets* up at 6.50 a.m.
- 4 We *do/make* the housework on Sunday.
- 5 She usually *has/does* a rest in the afternoon.

2 Complete the sentences.

got married	met	grew up
died	was born	had

- 1 Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
- 2 He _____ in Mississippi in the USA.
- 3 He _____ his future wife in Germany.
- 4 They _____ on 1 May 1967.
- 5 They _____ a daughter called Lisa Marie.
- 6 He _____ in 1977, aged 42.

Grammar

3 Write the past simple of the verbs.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 go <u>went</u> | 5 be _____ |
| 2 hurry _____ | 6 have _____ |
| 3 stop _____ | 7 arrive _____ |
| 4 leave _____ | 8 put _____ |

4a Make sentences with the past simple. Use the cues.

- 1 Yesterday was a good day for Julio.
- 1 Yesterday/be/a good day for Julio.
- 2 He/meet/his friends for lunch.
- 3 His boss/be/away.
- 4 He/go/home early.
- 5 His noisy neighbours/be/away.
- 6 He/watch/a football match on TV.

b Make the sentences negative.

Yesterday wasn't a good day for Julio.

5a Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Where did you go yesterday?
- 1 Where you did yesterday go ?
- 2 you speak to Who did ?
- 3 you Were at work ?
- 4 you Did on go a date ?
- 5 time you What did to bed go ?

b Answer the questions. Say what you did yesterday.

Skills

6 Read the text. Answer the questions.



Hans and Ilse Braun lived in Berlin. Hans had a good job in a bank and Ilsa was a French teacher. However, they weren't happy because they worked long hours and didn't spend much time together. In 2003 they decided to change their lives. They sold their house and bought a language school in France. Now Ilsa teaches German and Hans writes books. They live in a flat near the school and are very happy.

- 1 Where did Hans and Ilse live?
- 2 Where did Hans work?
- 3 Why were they unhappy?
- 4 When did they decide to change their lives?
- 5 Which country did they move to?
- 6 What does Ilsa do now?

7 Match the halves of the expressions.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 That's _____ | a really? |
| 2 Oh, _____ | b you mean. |
| 3 I heard _____ | c true. |
| 4 I see what _____ | d about that. |

8 Complete the conversations.

news	done	congratulations	go	luck
------	------	-----------------	----	------

- 1 A How did Jaime's exam go ?
B He passed.
- 2 A I got the job.
B Well _____ !
- 3 A We lost the football match.
B Better _____ next time.
- 4 A I won £1,000.
B That's fantastic _____ !
- 5 A We got married last week.
B _____ !

Wordlist 9–16

9 do homework (v)

do housework (v)
do the ironing (v)
get up (v)
get home (v)
get dressed (v)
go out (v)
go shopping (v)
go to bed (v)
have a rest (v)
have a shower (v)
have breakfast (v)
make a cup of coffee (v)
make an appointment (v)
make the bed (v)

/du: 'həʊmwɜ:k/

/du: 'haʊswɜ:k/
/du: ði 'aɪrənɪŋ/
/get 'ʌp/
/get 'həʊm/
/get 'drest/
/gəʊ 'aʊt/
/gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/
/gəʊ tə 'bed/
/hæv ə 'rest/
/hæv ə 'ʃaʊə(r)/
/hæv 'brekfəst/
/merk ə kəp əv 'kɔfi/
/merk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt/
/merk ðə 'bed/

10 bill (n)

drop (v)
go wrong (v)
hall (n)
hurry (v)
in a hurry (exp)
late (adj)
meeting (n)
neighbour (n)
on time (exp)
pocket (n)
post (n)
queue (n)

/bil/

/drɒp/
/gəʊ 'rɒŋ/
/hɔ:l/
/'hʌri/
/ɪn ə 'hʌri/
/leɪt/
/'mi:tɪŋ/
/'neɪbə(r)/
/ɒn 'taɪm/
/'pɒkɪt/
/pəʊst/
/kjue:/

11 argument (n)

contract (n)
deal with (v)
earn (v)
estate agent (n)
legal matter (n)
mortgage (n)
move house (v)
own (v)
solicitor (n)
take out (v)

/'a:gjumənt/

/'kontrækɪt/
/'di:l wɪð/
/ɜ:n/
/t'steɪt ,eɪdʒ(ə)nt/
/'lɪgl ,mætə(r)/
/'mɔ:gɪdʒ/
/mu:v 'haus/
/əʊn/
/sə'lɪsɪtə/
/terk 'aut/

12 I heard about that. (exp)

I see what you mean. (exp)
Oh, I see. (exp)
Oh, right. (exp)
That's true. (exp)
make money (v)
lose money (v)
save money (v)
close down (v)
eat like a horse (exp)
look good (exp)
till (prep)

/aɪ 'hərd əbaʊt ,ðæt/

/aɪ ,sɪ: wɒt ju: 'mi:n/
,sʊ aɪ 'sɪ/
,sʊ 'raɪt/
/'ðæts ,tru:/
/merk 'mʌni/
/lu:z 'mʌni/
/seɪv 'mʌni/
/kləuz 'daʊn/
/jɪt lɑ:k ə 'hɔ:s/
/luk 'gud/
/tɪl/

13 be born (v)

die (v)
fall in love (v)
get a job (v)
get divorced (v)
get married (v)
go out with (v)
graduate (v)
grow up (v)
have children (v)
lose a job (v)
meet your future
husband/wife (v)
move house (v)
retire (v)
take an exam (v)

/bi: 'bɔ:n/

/dai/
/,fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv/
,get ə 'dʒɒb/
,get dɪ'vɔ:st/
,get 'mærid/
/gəʊ 'aut wɪð/
/'grædʒueɪt/
/grɛu 'ʌp/
/hæv 'tʃildrən/
/lu:z ə 'dʒɒb/
/mɪt jɔ:(r) ,fju:rtʃə
'hʌzbənd ɔ: 'waɪf/
,mu:v 'haus/
/ri'taɪə(r)/
,teɪk ən ɪg'zæm/

14 anyway (adv)

child (n)
how (adv)
go on a date (v)
guy (n)
later (adj)
laugh (v)
leave school (v)
on business (exp)
subject (n)
tour guide (n)
wedding (n)
well (exp)

/'eniwei/

/tʃaɪld/
/hau/
/gəʊ ən ə 'deɪt/
/gai/
/'leɪtə(r)/
/la:f/
/li:v 'sku:l/
/ɒn 'bɪznəs/
/'sʌbdʒɪkt/
/'tuə(r) ,gaɪd/
/'wedɪŋ/
/wel/

15 blues (n)

classical music (n)
country music (n)
gospel (n)
jazz (n)
soul (n)
create (v)
dark (adj)
film director (n)
go blind (v)
heroin (n)
Oscar (n)

/blu:z/

/'klæsɪkəl ,mju:zɪk/
/'kʌntri ,mjʊzɪk/
/'gɔspl/
/dʒæz/
/səʊl/
/kri'eɪt/
/da:k/
/'film də,rektə(r)/
/gəʊ 'blænd/
/'herəʊm/
/'ɒskə(r)/

16 Congratulations! (exp)

That's fantastic news! (exp)
Well done! (exp)
I knew you could do it. (exp)
Never mind. (exp)
Better luck next time. (exp)
Oh, dear. (exp)
That's a pity. (exp)
How did it go? (exp)

/kən,grætʃu'leɪʃnz/

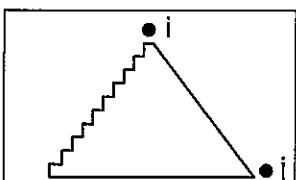
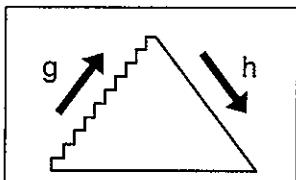
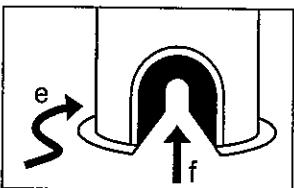
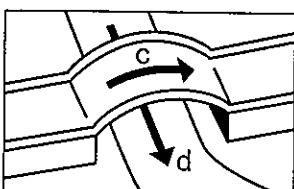
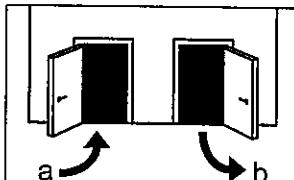
/ðæts fæn'tæstɪk ,nju:z/
,wel 'dən/
/aɪ 'nju: ju: kəd ,du: it/
/'nevə ,maɪnd/
/'betə lək ,nekst taim/
/,sʊ 'dɪə/
/'ðæts ə, piti/
/hau did it 'gəʊ/

Review 17–24

Vocabulary

1 Match the pictures with the locations and directions.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 go round <u>e</u> | 6 go out of <u> </u> |
| 2 go down <u> </u> | 7 go through <u> </u> |
| 3 go under <u> </u> | 8 at the top <u> </u> |
| 4 go into <u> </u> | 9 go over <u> </u> |
| 5 go up <u> </u> | 10 at the bottom <u> </u> |



Grammar

2 Choose the correct form.

- 1 We usually cycle / are cycling to school.
- 2 You don't work / aren't working on Saturdays.
- 3 Pavel has / 's having lunch at the moment.
- 4 Do you usually wear / Are you usually wearing jeans?
- 5 It doesn't snow / isn't snowing today.

3 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in the past continuous.

write play watch make

- 1 I an email.
- 2 Martin and Erik golf.
- 3 Amelie dinner.
- 4 Alexis and Mo a DVD.

4 Complete the answers.

- 1 Were you making lunch? Yes, I .
- 2 Were Joe and Mel working? Yes, they .
- 3 Was In-sook writing an email? No, she .
- 4 Were Tak Hung and Tony studying? No, they .

Skills

5 Match the sentences with the responses.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 The airport, please. <u>c</u> | a With friends. |
| 2 Are you here on holiday? <u> </u> | b Thank you. |
| 3 Do you like New York? <u> </u> | c Which terminal? |
| 4 Where are you staying? <u> </u> | d Yes, it's very nice. |
| 5 Enjoy your holiday. <u> </u> | e No, on business. |

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

My name is Javi and I'm from Spain. Last year I was in Wales for a meeting. One evening I was driving back to my hotel and I passed an old pub called The Castle Tavern. I decided to stop and have a drink. I was the only person in the pub. An old woman wearing a black dress served my drink. She said she was the owner of the pub. The next day I told the hotel receptionist about the pub. He looked very surprised. 'That's impossible,' he said. 'The Castle Tavern closed in 1957 when the owner died.'

- 1 Javi is Spanish. T
- 2 He was on holiday.
- 3 He was walking back to his hotel.
- 4 The pub was very busy.
- 5 A young woman served him.
- 6 The woman was wearing a black dress.
- 7 The Castle Tavern closed in 1957.
- 8 The owner is still alive.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- 1 you like a Would hand ?
- 2 kind very 's That .
- 3 Can hand give you me a ?
- 4 it No, 's OK .

8 Complete the directions.

end directions traffic lights hand
for along turn about

Here are the ¹directions to our office. When you leave the motorway, ²_____ left. Drive ³_____ the road for ⁴_____ a kilometre. Look ⁵_____ a hospital on the right- ⁶_____ side. Turn left at the next ⁷_____. Our offices are at the ⁸_____ of the street, on the corner.

Wordlist 17–24

17	change (v) depart from (v) direct (adj) express (n) fare (n) first class (adj) get to (v) local train (n) platform (n) return (n) seat reservation (n) single (n) standard class (n) station (n) train (n)	/tʃeɪndʒ/ /dr'pa:t ,frəm/ /dr'rekt/ /ik'spres/ /feə(r)/ /fɜ:st 'kla:s/ /'get tu/ 'ləʊkl ,trem/ /'plætfɔ:m/ /rɪ'tɔ:n/ /'sɪrt rezə'vezʃn/ /'sɪŋgl/ /'stændəd ,kla:s/ /'steɪʃn/ /treɪn/	21	along the street (exp) at the bottom of the hill (exp) at the end of the road (exp) at the top of the hill (exp) down the hill (exp) in the middle of the square (exp) into the car park (exp) on the corner of the street (exp) out of the car park (exp) over the bridge (exp) past the shop (exp) round the park (exp) turn left (exp) turn right (exp) through the park (exp) under the bridge (exp) up the hill (exp)	/ə,lon ðə 'stri:t/ /æt ðə ,bɒtəm əv ðə 'hil/ /æt ði ,end əv ðə 'reud/ /æt ðə ,tɒp əv ðə 'hil/ /daʊn ðə 'hil/ /in ðə ,mɪdl əv ðə 'skweə/ /int̬ ðə 'ka: ,park/ /ɒn ðə ,kɔ:nə(r) əv ðə 'stri:t/ /aut əv ðə 'ka: ,park/ /əʊvə(r) ðə 'bridʒ/ /pɑ:st ðə 'ʃɒp/ /raʊnd ðə 'pa:k/ /tən 'left/ /tən 'rait/ /θru: ðə 'park/ /ʌndə(r) ðə 'bridʒ/ /ʌp ðə 'hil/
18	cycle (v) do a crossword (v) jog (v) play golf (v) read a book (v) sunbathe (v) swim (v) at the moment deliver (v) get wet (v) give someone a lift (v) heavy (adj) nowhere (adv) stand (v) wake up (v)	/'saɪkl/ /du: ə 'krɒswɜ:d/ /dʒɒg/ /plei 'gɒlf/ /ri:d ə 'bʊk/ /'sænbɛɪð/ /swim/ ,æt ðə 'meʊmənt/ /dr'ɪvə(r)/ /get 'wet/ /grɪv səmwan ə 'lift/ /'hevi/ /'nəʊweə(r)/ /stænd/ /weɪk 'ʌp/	22	cash machine (n) Excuse me. (exp) shop window (n) sweatshirt (n) wait for (v) while (conj)	/'kæʃ mə,ʃɪ:n/ /ɪk'skjuz ə mi/ /ʃɒp 'wɪndəʊ/ /'swetʃɜ:t/ /'weɪt fo:/ /waɪl/
19	transport sign (n) crossroads (n pl) dead end (n) no entry roadworks (n pl) sharp bend (n) steep hill (n)	/'trænsport ,sain/ /'krɒsroʊdz/ /ded 'end/ /nəʊ 'entri/ /'rəʊdwɜ:ks/ /ʃɑ:p 'bend/ /stɪp 'hil/	23	corridor (n) dig (v) have a rest (v) impossible (adj) knock (v) point to (v) restaurant (n) stay at (v) waiter (n)	/'kɔ:rɪdɔ:/ /dɪg/ /hæv ə 'rest/ /ɪm'posəbl/ /nɒk/ /'poɪnt tu/ /'restɔ:nt/ /'stei ,æt/ /'weɪtə(r)/
20	give someone a hand (with ...)? (exp) It's OK. (exp) Sure (exp). That's very kind. (exp) by the way (exp) just a minute (exp) show someone around (v)	/grɪv səmwan ə 'hænd wɪθ/ /ɪts ,əʊ'keɪ/ /ʃɔ:/ /ðæts ,veri 'kaɪnd/ /baɪ ðə 'wei/ /dʒʌst ə 'mɪnɪt/ /ʃəʊ səmwan ə'rəʊnd/	24	junction (n) roundabout (n) traffic lights (n pl) shopping centre (n) on the left-hand side (exp) on the right-hand side (exp) After about ... (exp) how to get there (exp) Go along ... (v) (exp) Look for ... (v) (exp) Take the second turning on the left. (exp) go straight on (exp) speed limit Interstate Highway (n) mile (n) motorway (n)	/'dʒʌŋkʃn/ /'raʊndəbəut/ /'træfɪk laɪts/ /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,sentə(r)/ /ɒn ðə ,lefθænd 'saɪd/ /ɒn ðə ,raɪfænd 'saɪd/ /'a:ftə(r) əbaʊt/ /haʊ tə 'get ,ðeə/ /gəʊ ə'lɔ:g/ /lʊk fo:(r)/ /teɪk ðə 'sekənd ,tənɪŋ ɒn ðə 'lef/ /gəʊ stree't 'ɒn/ /'spɪd ,lɪmɪt/ /'ɪntəstɪt ,haʊwei/ /maɪl/ /'məʊtəwei/

Review 25–32

Vocabulary

- 1 Name six places. Use the words.

sea desert ocean islands lake river

The Mediterranean Sea

- 2 Look at the pictures. Complete the text with the correct words.



Mary Jones is in her ¹*twenties / sixties*. She is ²*short / tall* and fairly ³*slim / overweight*. She has ⁴*medium-length / short* dark hair. Her brother James is ⁵*young / middle-aged*. He is very ⁶*short / tall*. He has very ⁷*dark / fair* hair. He's got a ⁸*moustache / beard*.

Grammar

- 3 Make sentences with the correct form of *going to*.

- 1 Manos is going to meet his girlfriend. (meet)
- 2 _____ Hajar and Naila _____ dinner? (make)
- 3 I _____ TV tonight. (not/watch)
- 4 _____ you _____ your sister? (phone)
- 5 _____ Rosanna _____ tomorrow? (study)
- 6 The match _____ at three o'clock. (start)
- 7 We _____ to the party. (not/go)

- 4 Write the adverbs.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1 easy | easily | 4 quick |
| 2 good | | 5 fast |
| 3 bad | | 6 careful |

- 5 Tick ✓ or correct the sentences.

- 1 He doesn't sing very good. well
- 2 The meal was excellent.
- 3 They play badly football.
- 4 India sounds beautifully.
- 5 She's a terribly teacher.
- 6 This is an easily exercise.
- 7 The wine tastes awful.

Skills

- 6 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week John bought an old boat. He's going to repair it and paint it red. In June he's going to leave England and sail to Greece. It's going to take two months to get to Greece. On the way, he's going to visit France, Spain, Morocco, and Italy. He isn't going to go alone. His wife is going to stay in England, but John's going to take his cat, Errol.

- 1 What did John buy last week?
- 2 Who is going to repair and paint the boat?
- 3 When is John going to arrive in Greece?
- 4 How many countries is John going to visit?
- 5 Is John's wife going to go with him?
- 6 Who is Errol?

- 7 Match the sentences with the responses.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Do you like swimming? _____ | 2 Which shirt do you like? _____ |
| 3 I love shopping. _____ | 4 Sara doesn't like cooking. _____ |
| a I prefer the blue one. c No, I hate it. | b Really? I don't mind it. d Do you? I can't stand it. |

- 8 Write the opposites.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 selfish | 3 quiet |
| 2 hard-working | 4 confident |

- 9 Complete the conversations.

know maybe sure probably

- 1 A Is Milo going to quit his job?
B Yes, _____.
- 2 A Are you going to go to the party?
B _____.
- 3 A When does your course start?
B We don't _____. yet.
- 4 A Where is Emily?
B I'm not _____.

- 10 Put the words in the correct order to make shopping expressions.

- 1 Can I help you?
- 2 help I Can you ?
- 3 this pen How is much ?
- 4 I take 'll it .
- 5 you see Would the one other like to ?
- 6 that Can have I one ?

Wordlist 25–32

25	Africa (n) Antarctica (n) Asia (n) Europe (n) Lake Victoria (n) Mount Everest (n) North America (n) Oceania (n) South America (n) The Amazon (n) The Arctic Ocean (n) The Atlantic Ocean (n) The Canary Islands (n) The Indian Ocean (n) The Mediterranean Sea (n) The Pacific Ocean (n) The Rockies (n) The Sahara Desert (n) The South Pole (n)	/'æfrika/ 'æn'tɑ:ktrɪkə/ 'eɪzɪə/ 'juərəp/ 'leɪk vɪk'tɔ:riə/ 'maʊnt 'e'verist/ 'nɔ:θ ə'merɪkə/ 'əʊsi:i'æniə/ 'saʊθ ə'merɪka/ 'ði 'æməzən/ 'ði ,æk'tɪk 'əʊʃn/ 'ði ət,læntɪk 'əʊʃn/ 'ðe kə'nəri ,aɪləndz/ 'ðe ,indiən 'əʊʃn/ 'ðe ,medɪt'reniən 'si:/ 'ðe pə,sɪfɪk 'əʊʃn/ 'ðe 'rɒkɪz/ 'ðe sə,harrə 'dezət/ 'ðe ,saʊθ 'pəʊl/	26	advert (n) exactly (adv) have an early night (v) I can't believe it. (exp) robot (n) the news (n)	'ædvɜ:t/ 'ig'zæktli/ 'hæv ,ən 'zɪli 'naɪt/ 'aɪ ,kən't bɪ'lɪv ɪt/ 'rəʊbɒt/ 'ðe 'nju:z/	27	east (n) north (n) south (n) west (n) all over boat (n) break a record (v) continent (n) European (adj) marathon (n) race (n) rally (n) River Thames (n) speedboat (n) take (v) take part in (v) unusual (adj) vintage car (n) Wales (n) yacht (n)	/i:st/ 'nɔ:θ/ 'saʊθ/ 'west/ 'ɔ:l 'əvə(r)/ 'bəut/ 'breɪk ə 'rekɔ:d/ 'kɒntɪnənt/ 'ju:ərə'pi:ən/ 'mærəθən/ 'reɪs/ 'ræli/ 'rɪvə(r) 'temz/ 'spi:dbo:t/ 'terk/ 'terk 'pa:t ɪn/ 'ʌn'ju:ʒu:əl/ 'vɪntɪdʒ 'ka:(r)/ 'weɪlz/ 'jɒt/	28	Maybe. (exp) We aren't sure. (exp) We don't know yet. (exp) Yes, probably. (exp)	/'meɪbi/ 'wi ,a:n't ʃɔ:/ 'wi ,dəʊnt' nəʊ, 'jet/ 'jes 'prɒbəblɪ/	29	build (n) medium build (adj) medium height (adj) overweight (adj) short (adj) slim (adj) tall (adj) general appearance (n) attractive (adj) good-looking (adj) handsome (adj) pretty (adj) age (n) in his/her seventies (exp) middle-aged (adj) young (adj) hair (n) bald (adj) beard (n) blonde (adj) brown (adj) curly (adj) dark (adj) fair (adj) medium length (adj) moustache (n) long (adj) straight (adj) wavy (adj)	/bɪld/ 'mɪdɪəm 'bɪld/ 'mɪdɪəm 'haɪt/ 'əʊvə'weɪt/ 'ʃɔ:t/ 'slɪm/ 'tɔ:l/ 'dʒenrəl ə'pri:rəns/ 'ə'træktrɪ/ 'gʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ 'hænsəm/ 'prɪti/ 'eɪdʒ/ 'm ɦɪz /hə 'sevntɪz/ 'mɪdl 'eɪdʒd/ 'jʌŋ/ 'heə(r)/ 'bo:ld/ 'brɛd/ 'blɒnd/ 'braʊn/ 'kə:li/ 'da:k/ 'feə(r)/ 'mɪdɪəm 'leŋθ/ 'mə'sta:ʃ/ 'lɒŋ/ 'streɪt/ 'weɪvi/
30	badly (adv) delicious (adj) excellent (adj) perfect (adj) perfectly (adv) terrible (adj) well (adj)	'bædli/ 'dr'ɪʃəs/ 'eksələnt/ 'pə:fekt/ 'pə:fektli/ 'terəbl/ 'wel/	31	I can't stand ... (exp) I don't mind ... (exp) confident (adj) generous (adj) hard-working (adj) lazy (adj) quiet (adj) noisy (adj) selfish (adj) shy (adj)	'aɪ ,kə:n't stænd/ 'aɪ ,dəʊnt 'mænd/ 'kɒnfɪd(ə)n̩t/ 'dʒenərəs/ 'hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ/ 'leɪzɪ/ 'kwaɪət/ 'nɔɪzɪ/ 'selfɪʃ/ 'ʃaɪ/	32	have a look at (v) Can I help you? (exp) How much are those ... ? (exp) I think I prefer ... (exp) I'll take it. (exp)	'hæv ə 'lʊk ət/ 'kən aɪ 'help ju:/ 'haʊ matʃ ə 'ðəʊz/ 'aɪ 'θɪŋk aɪ prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ 'aɪ 'lɪ tæk ɪt/						

Review 33–40

Vocabulary

1 Write six kinds of TV programme.

a documentary,

2 Complete the conversations.

headache	sick	painful	temperature
burnt	flu	rash	bleeding

- 1 A What's her temperature?
B It's quite high, 39°C.
- 2 A My back itches.
B Yes, you've got a _____.
- 3 A My finger's _____.
B Don't worry. I've got some plasters.
- 4 A What's the matter?
B I feel _____.
- 5 A I've got a _____.
B Here, I've got some painkillers.
- 6 A I've got _____.
B Oh, dear. Stay in bed then.
- 7 A My knee is swollen.
B Is it very _____?
- 8 A I've _____ my finger.
B Put it under some cold water.

Grammar

3 Make questions and sentences with the present perfect. Use the cues.

- 1 Have you ever been to Tunisia?
- 1 you/ever/go/to Tunisia?
- 2 He/never/fail/an exam.
- 3 they/ever/visit/Madrid?
- 4 We/never/win/anything.
- 5 she/ever/be/on TV?

4 Choose the correct form.

- 1 A What's Sam's phone number?
B Er, I've forgotten / forgot.
- 2 A When have you seen / did you see Toni?
B Last Saturday.
- 3 A Can you play golf on Tuesday?
B No, sorry. I've broken / broke my thumb.
- 4 A Where's Hannah?
B She's gone / went to a meeting.
- 5 A Oh, no! We've missed / missed the bus.
B There's another one in five minutes.
- 6 A Is Fred here?
B No. He's gone / went at 3.30.

Skills

5 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Thieves have stolen €100 million from Best Bank. The money is / isn't in the bank now.
- 2 The new Olympic stadium has opened. You can / can't use the stadium now.
- 3 The US president has arrived in Beijing. The president is in Beijing / the US now.
- 4 A fire has destroyed ten houses in Birmingham. People can / can't live in the houses now.

6 Complete the advice to travellers.

water	legs and feet	hand luggage
comfortable	toiletry items	vaccinations

- 1 See your doctor for your vaccinations.
- 2 Don't forget to pack your _____, such as toothpaste and a hairbrush.
- 3 Drink lots of _____ to avoid dehydration.
- 4 When you are sitting down, move your _____.
- 5 Wear _____ clothes.
- 6 Put your money in your _____.



7 Match the halves of the expressions.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 What seems to _____ | a hurt? |
| 2 When did _____ | b at your chest? |
| 3 Can I have a look _____ | c check it. |
| 4 Where does it _____ | d be the problem? |
| 5 We'd better _____ | e the pain start? |

Wordlist 33–40

33	TV programme (n) cartoon (n) chat show (n) documentary (n) film (n) game show (n) hospital drama (n) movie (n) music programme (n) police drama (n) reality TV show (n) sitcom (n) soap opera (n) sports programme (n) the news (n) TV advert (n) weather forecast (n) channel (n) commercial (adj) licence fee (n) newsreader (n) satellite TV (n) subscription (n)	/ti: 'vi: ,prəʊgræm/ /ka:t'nu:n/ /'tʃæt ,ʃəʊ/ ,dɒkjju'mentri/ /film/ /'geɪm ,ʃəʊ/ /'hɒspɪtl ,dræmə/ /'mu:vi/ /'mju:zɪk ,prəʊgræm/ /pə'lɪs ,dræmə/ /ri,æləti ti: 'vi: ,ʃəʊ/ /'sɪtkɒm/ /'səʊp ,əprə/ /'spɔts ,prəʊgræm/ /ðə 'nju:z/ /,tɪ: 'vi: ,ædvə:t/ /'weðə(r) ,fɔ:kɑ:st/ /'tʃænl/ /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ /'laɪsns ,fi:/ /'nju:z ,rɪ:də(r)/ /sætəlɪt ,tɪ: 'vi:/ /səb'skrɪpʃn/	37	health problem (n) I've bruised my leg. (exp) I've burnt my hand. (exp) I've cut my finger. (exp) I feel sick. (exp) I've got a cold. (exp) I've got a rash. (exp) I've got a temperature. (exp) I've got an infection. (exp) I've got flu. (exp) I've hurt my knee. (exp) I've sprained my ankle. (exp) My arm itches. (exp) My thumb's painful. (exp) My nose is bleeding. (exp) My elbow's swollen. (exp)	/'helθ ,prɒbləm/ /aɪv ,bru:zd mar 'leg/ /aɪv ,bɜ:nt mar 'hænd/ /aɪv ,kʌt mar 'frɪŋgə(r)/ /aɪf fi:l 'sɪk/ /aɪv ,gɒt ə 'keʊld/ /aɪv ,gɒt ə 'ræʃ/ /aɪv ,gɒt ə 'temprɪ,tʃə/ /aɪv ,gɒt ən m'fekʃn/ /aɪv gɒt 'flu:/ /aɪv ,hɜ:t mar 'ni:/ /aɪv ,sprend mar 'æŋkl/ /maɪ 'a:m itʃz/ /maɪ 'θʌmz ,pemfl/ /maɪ 'nəuz ɪz ,bli:dnɪ/ /maɪ 'elbəuz ,swəʊlnə/
34	lottery (n) lucky (adj) millions of pounds (exp) miss a plane (v) prize (n) ride a horse (v) save someone's life (v) ticket unlucky (adj) wow (exp) win (v)	/'lɒtəri/ /'lʌki/ /,'miljənz əv 'paʊndz/ /,'mɪs ə 'pleɪn/ /'praɪz/ /,'raɪd ə 'hɔ:s/ /,'seɪv səm'wʌnз 'laɪf/ /'trɪkɪt/ /ʌn'lʌki/ /wau/ /wɪn/	38	bone (n) break (v) downstairs (adv) drop (v) fall (v) fall off (v) happen (v) hurt (v)	/bəʊn/ /breɪk/ /daʊn'steəz/ /drɒp/ /fɔ:l/ /fɔ:l 'ɒf/ /hæpən/ /hɜ:t/
35	accident (n) award (n) coast (n) crash into (v) destroy (v) diamond (n) head of government (n) headline (n) hit (v) kill (v) latest (adj) prime minister (n) thief (n) tropical storm (n)	/'æk्सɪd(ə)nt/ /ə'wɔ:d/ /kəʊst/ /,'kræf 'ɪntu/ /dr'strɔ:/ /dæmənd/ /hed əv 'gʌvənmənt/ /hedlæm/ /hit/ /kil/ /'lɜ:tɪst/ /praɪm 'mɪnɪstə(r)/ /θi:f/ /trəpɪkl 'stɔ:m/	39	avoid (v) charger (n) dehydration (n) hairbrush (n) insect bite (n) jewellery (n) knife (n) luggage (n) medical item (n) medicine (n) mobile phone (n) painkiller (n) plaster (n) scissors (n pl) suitcase (n) sunscreen (n) tablet (n) toiletry item (n) toothbrush (n) toothpaste (n) vaccination (n) valid (adj)	/ə'voɪd/ /tʃɑ:dʒə(r)/ /dɪhydrエ'yeɪʃn/ /heəbrʌʃ/ /ɪnsekt 'baɪt/ /dʒu:əlri/ /naɪf/ /lʌdʒɪdʒ/ /medɪkl ,aɪtəm/ /medsn/ /məʊbail 'fəʊn/ /peɪnkɪlə(r)/ /pla:stə(r)/ /sɪzəz/ /sʊtkeɪs/ /sʌnskrɪ:n/ /tæbleɪt/ /tɔ:lətri ,aɪtəm/ /tu:θbrʌʃ/ /tu:θpeɪst/ /væk'sɪ'nɛɪʃn/ /vælɪd/
36	I believe ... (exp) I think ... (exp) No, I don't think so. (exp) Yes, I think so. (exp)	/aɪ br'liev/ /aɪ 'θɪŋk/ /'nəʊ aɪ dəʊnt 'θɪŋk səʊ/ /'jes aɪ 'θɪŋk səʊ/	40	have a look at (v) In the meantime ... (exp) We'd better check your ... (exp) What seems to be the problem? (exp)	/hæv ə 'lʊk æt/ /ɪn ðə 'mi:ntaɪm/ /wɪd 'betə(r) tʃek jo:(r)/ /wɒt ,sɪ:mz tə bi: ðə 'prɒbləm/

Review 41–48

Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct word.

- 1 peel *potatoes / chips*
- 2 roast a *chicken / an omelette*
- 3 *grill / boil* an egg
- 4 *pour / slice* water
- 5 put food on a *bowl / plate*
- 6 a *mixed / stirred* salad

2a Match the items with the shops.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 1 chicken | <u>c</u> | a a stationery shop |
| 2 painkillers | — | b a newsagent's |
| 3 onions | — | c a butcher's |
| 4 magazines | — | d a chemist's |
| 5 paper and pens | — | e a greengrocer's |

b Write four more shops. Say one thing you can buy in each shop.

Grammar

3 Complete the recipe.

a slices grams four little
 some many few an much

For Scrambled Eggs on Toast you need:

two ¹slices of bread, ²_____ large eggs, 100
³_____ of butter.

Toast the bread and put it on ⁴_____ plate.

Mix the eggs in a bowl with a ⁵_____ milk. Add
⁶_____ salt. Put the butter in a saucepan and pour
 the eggs and milk into the pan. Cook the eggs for a
⁷_____ minutes. Serve on the toast.

This is ⁸_____ easy recipe, it doesn't take ⁹_____
 time and you don't need ¹⁰_____ things.

4 Write the comparative and superlative forms.

nicer big noisy popular good bad
 nicer, the nicest

5 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in brackets.

- 1 Spain is smaller than China. (small)
- 2 My car is _____ car in the world. (slow)
- 3 Maths is _____ Geography. (bad)
- 4 This is _____ room in the house. (big)
- 5 Her laptop was _____ Tom's. (cheap)
- 6 Reading was _____ thing in Chinese. (difficult)
- 7 Heidi is _____ Hans. (friendly)
- 8 The Riviera is _____ restaurant in town. (expensive)

Skills

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?



Last year Sally heard about the Tomato Soup Diet. Every day you have four bowls of soup and three litres of water. It sounded boring but it was a fast way to lose weight. On the first day she

bought some tomatoes at the market and made lots of soup. It was delicious, and she lost three kilos in five days. On the sixth day she felt sick and she didn't have much energy so she decided to stop the diet and have a big plate of steak and chips.

- 1 The soup was made of meat.
- 2 She bought the soup at the market.
- 3 She liked the soup.
- 4 She lost three kilos on the diet.
- 5 She was on the diet for seven days.
- 6 She had lots of energy.

7 Answer the questions.

- 1 What shops are there near your house?
- 2 Do you go to a market? What do you buy there?
- 3 Where do you do most of your food shopping? Why?

Writing

8 Complete the expressions.

serious believe not for

- 1 Oh, _____ goodness sake!
- 2 You can't be _____!
- 3 Oh no, _____ again!
- 4 Oh, I don't _____ it!

9 Match the questions with the responses.

- 1 Is that any good? c
 - 2 What size is that? —
 - 3 Can I try this on, please? —
 - 4 It's too tight. —
 - 5 Anything else? —
- a Yes, the changing rooms are over there.
 b No, thanks.
 c Yes. This one's fine.
 d Extra large.
 e This one is a bigger size.

Wordlist 41–48

41	bowl (n) frying pan (n) plate (n) saucepans (n) bake (v) boil (v) fry (v) grill (v) roast (v) add (v) mix (v) peel (v) pour (v) slice (v) stir (v) weigh (v)	/bəʊl/ 'fræɪŋ ,pæn/ 'pleɪt/ 'sɔ:sɒpən/ /berk/ /boɪl/ /fraɪ/ /grɪl/ /rəʊst/ /æd/ /mɪks/ /pi:l/ /pɔ:(r)/ /slaɪs/ /stɜ:(r)/ /weɪ/ 42	/fru:t/ /mɪlk/ /'ra:zbəri/ /'strə:bəri/ /'ʃʊgə(r)/ /'wɔ:tə(r)/ /wain/ /fɔ:k/ /naɪf/ /spu:n/ /'eni/ /'bɒtl/ /ə 'fju:/ /græm/ /'ki:ləʊ/ /ə 'lɪtl/ /meni/ /mʌtʃ/ /pis/ /slaɪs/ /sʌm/	43	but however a couple (n) lots (n) basic rule (n) diet (n) energy (n) full (adj) lose weight (v) read about (v)	/bʌt/ /haʊ'vevə(r)/ /ə 'kʌpl/ /lɒts/ /,'beɪsɪk 'ru:l/ /daɪət/ /enədʒi/ /fʊl/ /luz 'weɪt/ /ri:d ə,baut/	44	Oh no, not again! (exp) Oh, for goodness sake! (exp) Oh, I don't believe it! (exp) You can't be serious! (exp) You must be joking! (exp)	/əʊ ,nəʊ not ə'gen/ /əʊ fə ,gʊdnəs 'seɪk/ /əʊ aɪ ,dəʊnt br'lɪx vɪt/ /ju: ,ka:nt bi 'sɪəriəs/ /ju: ,mʌst bi 'dʒəʊkɪŋ/	45	baker's (n) butcher's (n) chemist's (n) department store (n) estate agent's (n) flower shop (n) furniture shop (n) greengrocer's (n) hairdresser's (n) hardware shop (n) jewellery shop (n) music shop (n) newsagent's (n) sports shop (n) stationery shop (n) travel agent's (n)	/'beɪkəz/ /'butʃəz/ /'kemɪsts/ /dr'pa:tment ,sto:(r)/ /ɪ'steɪt ,eɪdʒənts/ /'flaʊə ,ʃɒp/ /'fɜ:nɪtʃə ,ʃɒp/ /'gri:ngৰেুসেৱ/ /'heɪdresেৱ/ /'hɑ:dweə ,ʃɒp/ /'dʒurəlri ,ʃɒp/ /'mjuzɪk ,ʃɒp/ /'nju:zeɪdʒənts/ /'spo:ts ,ʃɒp/ /'steɪnri ,ʃɒp/ /'trævl ,eɪdʒənts/	46	best (adj) better (adj) busy (adj) far (adj) friendly (adj) popular (adj) safe (adj) tidy (adj) worse worst	/best/ /'betə(r)/ /'bɪzi/ /'fa:(r)/ /'frendli/ /'pɒpjələ(r)/ /'sef/ /'taɪdi/ /wɜ:s/ /wɜ:st/	47	convenient (adj) fresher (adj) home delivery (n) on the other hand (exp) personal (adj) shopping centre (n) street market (n)	/kən'veniənt/ /'freʃə(r)/ / ,həʊm dr'livəri/ /ən ði 'ʌðə(r) hænd/ /'pɜ:sənl/ /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,sentə(r)/ /'stri:t ,ma:kɪt/	48	changing room (exp) How is it? (exp) Is that any good? (exp) size (n) try on (v) Buy now pay later (exp) Buy one get one free (exp) Closing down sale (n) Everything must go (exp) sale 50 % off special offer (n) Two for the price of one (exp) enough (adv) extra large (adj) loose (adj) medium (adj) tight (adj) too (adv)	/'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ,ru:m/ /haʊ 'iz it/ /iz ðæt eni 'gʊd/ /sarz/ /traɪ 'on/ /baɪ ,nau peɪ 'leɪtə(r)/ /baɪ wan ,get wan 'fri:/ / ,kləʊzɪŋ daʊn 'seɪl/ / ,evrɪθɪŋ mʌst 'gəʊ/ /seɪl 'fifti pə,sent 'ɒf/ / ,speʃl' ɒfə(r)/ /tu: fə ðə prais əv 'wan/ /ɪ'nʌf/ / ,ekstrə 'la:dʒ/ /lu:/ /'mɪ:diəm/ /ta:t/ /tu:/
-----------	---	--	---	-----------	---	---	-----------	--	--	-----------	--	---	-----------	--	--	-----------	---	---	-----------	---	---

Review 49–56

Vocabulary

1 Put the words in the correct column.

spend PIN number coins pay
borrow foreign currency cheque lend
notes bank account

Verbs	Bank	Cash
spend		

2 Complete the sentences. Use verbs from exercise 1.

- 1 How much money do you _____ on clothes?
- 2 Do you want me to _____ you some money?
- 3 Can I _____ €10? I haven't got any money.
- 4 We usually _____ by cheque.

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 I'd like to try water <u>d</u> | a diving? |
| 2 Davide loves collecting <u>_</u> | b DIY. |
| 3 I don't mind doing <u>_</u> | c the Internet? |
| 4 They haven't tried mountain <u>_</u> | d skiing. |
| 5 Do you like surfing <u>_</u> | e climbing. |
| 6 Has she tried scuba <u>_</u> | f things. |

Grammar

4 Complete the text. Use the verbs in brackets.

In five years' time I ¹'ll be (be) rich. I ² _____ (not / live) in Ireland. I ³ _____ (move) to Brazil. I ⁴ _____ (buy) a house and I ⁵ _____ (learn) Portuguese, but I ⁶ _____ (not / find) a job. I ⁷ _____ (relax) all day and I ⁸ _____ (go) clubbing at night. I ⁹ _____ (not / be) married and I ¹⁰ _____ (not / have) any children.

5 Make sentences about your life in five years' time.

- 1 What kind of job will you have? I'll be a doctor.
- 2 Where will you be?
- 3 Will you have a house or an apartment?
- 4 Will you be married or single?
- 5 How many children will you have?

6 Make sentences with the first conditional. Use the cues.

- 1 You won't get wet if you take an umbrella.
- 1 You / not / get wet / if / you / take / an umbrella.
- 2 He / buy / a car / if / he / pass / his driving test.
- 3 If / they / leave / now / they / not / miss / the train.
- 4 If / the weather / be / horrible / we / not / go out.
- 5 I / get / some coffee / if / I / go out.
- 6 If / I / see Jan / I / tell / him / about the meeting.

Skills

7 Read the text. Choose the correct answers.



If you like food, you'll love this holiday in Vietnam. You'll start in Hanoi and spend three nights at the Hotel Annam. We'll take you to the market, where you'll learn how to choose the best food, then our chef will show you how to prepare typical Vietnamese food. After that, you'll leave the north of Vietnam and fly south to Ho Chi Minh City. You'll have four days there and learn to cook 'bo bay mon', a seven-part beef dinner. When you aren't in the kitchen, there will be visits to some of Vietnam's ancient temples and monuments.

- 1 The main activity is *shopping / cooking.*
- 2 The Hotel Annam is in *Hanoi / Ho Chi Minh City.*
- 3 You'll visit *two / three* places.
- 4 Ho Chi Minh City is in the *north / south* of Vietnam.
- 5 'Bo bay mon' is a kind of *food / monument.*
- 6 You can *sunbathe / go sightseeing.*

Speaking

8 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- 1 It's losing money.
- 1 losing 's money It .
- 2 isn't good Business very .
- 3 bad a It price isn't .
- 4 can't We it afford .
- 5 will How that cost much ?

9 Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

- a 2 How many nights is that for?
- b __ And how many guests will there be?
- c 1 I'd like to make a reservation for 11 May, please.
- d __ Four nights.
- e __ Fine. The price will be €100.
- f __ Does that include breakfast?
- g __ One – me. And I'd like a sea view, please.
- h __ Yes, it does.

Wordlist 49–56

49	bank (n) bank account (n) cheque (n) credit card (n) PIN number (n) salary (n) cash (n) change (n) coin (n) foreign currency (n) note (n) receipt (n) borrow (v) exchange (v) lend (v) pay (n) save (v) spend (v) abroad (adj) electronically (adv) enter (v) cash machine (n) insert (v) remove (v)	/bæŋk/ /'bæŋk ə,kaʊnt/ /tʃek/ /'kredit ,ka:d/ /'pɪn ,nʌmbə(r)/ /'sæləri/ /kæʃ/ /tʃeindʒ/ /kɔm/ /fɔrən 'kʌrənsi/ /nəut/ /ri'sit/ /'bɒrəʊ/ /ɪks'tʃeindʒ/ /lend/ /peɪ/ /seɪv/ /spend/ /ə'brɔ:d/ /ɪ,lek'trɒnikli/ /'entə(r)/ /'kæʃ mæ,ʃin/ /ɪn'se:t/ /rɪ'mu:v/ 50	canoeing clubbing collecting things doing DIY going out with going to the gym mountain-climbing painting relaxing sailing scuba-diving sightseeing surfing the Internet sunbathing water-skiing	/kə'nu:ŋ/ /'klaBɪŋ/ /kə'lektɪŋ ,θɪŋz/ /dʌŋ di: aɪ 'wai/ /gəʊŋ 'aut wrð/ /gəʊŋ tə ðə 'dʒim/ /'maʊntən ,klaimɪŋ/ /'peɪntɪŋ/ /rɪ'læk�ɪŋ/ /'selɪŋ/ /'sku:bə ,daɪvɪŋ/ /'saɪtsi:ŋ/ /sə:fɪŋ ði 'ɪntənet/ /'sænbərðɪŋ/ /'wo:təskɪŋ/ 51
52	computer chip (n) email (v) future (n) prediction (n) text (n) work from home (v)	/kəm'pjju:tə(r) ,tʃɪp/ /'imeɪl/ /'fju:tʃə(r)/ /pri'dɪkʃn/ /tekst/ /wə:k frəm 'həʊm/ 53	autumn (n) spring (n) winter (n) cherry blossom (n) crowded (n) Japan (n) lunch break (n) postcard (n) stay in (v) visa (n)	/'ɔ:təm/ /sprɪŋ/ /'wɪntə(r)/ /'tʃeri ,blɒsəm/ /'kraʊdɪd/ /dʒə'pæn/ /'lʌntʃ breɪk/ /'pəʊstka:d/ /steɪ 'm/ /'vɪzə/ 54
54	actually (adv) appear (v) book a holiday (v) diesel (n) disease (n) electricity (n) global warming (n) hydrogen (n) keyboard (n) population (n) powerful (adj) space (n) transport (n) war (n)	/'ækʃuəli/ /ə'pi:(r)/ /buk ə 'hɒlədeɪ/ /'di:zl/ /dr'zi:z/ /ɪ,lek'trɪsəti/ /gləʊbl 'wɔ:rmɪŋ/ /'haɪdrədʒən/ /'kɪbɔ:d/ /pəpju'leʃn/ /'paʊəfl/ /'speis/ /'trænsport/ /wɔ:(r)/ 55	ancient monument (n) by the sea (exp) coral reef (n) explore (v) extra (adj) five-star (adj) have a massage (v) holiday guide (n) rainforest (n) resort (n) swimming pool (n) tropical fish (n) yacht (n)	/eɪnʃənt 'mɒnjumənt/ /baɪ ðə 'si:/ /kɔrəl 'rɪf/ /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ /'ekstrə/ /fəv stɑ:(r)/ /hæv ə 'mæsæ:z/ /'holədeɪ gaɪd/ /'reɪnfɔ:rist/ /rɪ'zɔ:t/ /'swimɪŋ pu:l/ /'trəpɪkl 'fiʃ/ /jɑ:t/ 56
55	afford (v) broke (adj) Business isn't very good. (exp) cost (v) lose money (exp) not a bad price (exp)	/ə'fɔ:d/ /brəʊk/ /'bɪznəs ɪznt veri ,gʊd/ /kɒst/ /lu:z 'mʌni/ /nɒt ə bæd 'præs/	Does that include ... ? (exp) How many ... ? (exp) I'd like to ... (exp) We'd like ... (exp) What name is it? (exp) When for? (exp) bed and breakfast (n) Do not disturb. (exp) lobby (n) reception (n) vacancies (n pl)	/dəz, ðæt ì:m'klu:d/ /haʊ 'meni/ /aɪd 'lark tu/ /wi:d 'lark/ /wɒt 'neim iz ìt/ /wen 'fɔ:(r)/ /bed ən 'brekfəst/ /du: nɒt dr'stə:b/ /'lɒbi/ /ri'sepʃn/ /'verkənsiz/ 57

Review 57–64

Grammar

1a Look at the definitions. Write the missing letters.

- 1 You sit on this.
a chair
- 2 You put rubbish in this.
a w_____ b_____
- 3 You make copies with this.
a p_____
- 4 You put books on this.
a s_____
- 5 You keep files in this.
a f_____ c_____

b Write four more office items.

a computer

2a Match the halves of the words.

- | | | |
|---------------|---|---------------|
| 1 a washing | e | a cleaner |
| 2 an air | l | b radio |
| 3 an electric | o | c conditioner |
| 4 a light | o | d player |
| 5 a vacuum | u | e machine |
| 6 a DVD | v | f fan |
| 7 a clock | u | g bulb |

b What things do you use in your home?

I use a washing machine,

Grammar

3 Julia is a secretary. Look at the table. Make six sentences about her job. Use *has to/must, doesn't have to, or mustn't*.

She *must* arrive on time.

Necessary	Not necessary	Not allowed
arrive on time	make coffee for the boss	wear jeans
answer the phone	do shift work	smoke in the office

4 Rewrite the advice. Use *should/shouldn't*.

- 1 You *shouldn't* drink alcohol and drive.
- 1 Don't drink alcohol and drive.
- 2 Have a holiday.
- 3 Go to the doctor's.
- 4 Don't eat lots of chocolate.
- 5 Get a new car.
- 6 Don't stand on the table.

Skills

5 Read the text. Answer the questions.



In Scotland about 13,000 people a year die because they smoke cigarettes. In 2004 the Scottish Parliament passed a new law. Since 2006, people can't smoke in public places (pubs, cafés, restaurants, offices). In a pub in Glasgow we asked people about the new law.

Jimmy Kenzie: Well, I work in this pub. I don't smoke so I think the new law is a good idea.

Rod Dunbar: I agree with Jimmy. The pub is much nicer now and we can smoke in the pub garden.

Mary Brown: In my opinion the law is a bad idea. Now I have to smoke outside in the rain.

- 1 How many people in Scotland die each year because they smoke?
- 2 What public places does the writer mention?
- 3 When was the new law passed?
- 4 Where are the people?
- 5 Who thinks the law is a good idea?
- 6 Who thinks the law is a bad idea?
- 7 Has your country got a law like this?

6 Complete the greetings.

let surprise take nice come

1 Hi, Petra. Come on in.

2 _____ a seat.

3 _____ me get you a drink.

4 This is a nice _____.

5 It's _____ to see you.

7 Read the dialogues. Complete the words.

- 1 A Why is there water in the kitchen?
B The washing machine is leaking.
- 2 A Can I borrow your camera?
B I'm sorry, it isn't w____ing.
- 3 A Are you going to buy that kettle?
B No, it's sc____t_h_d.
- 4 A Why aren't you wearing your new shirt?
B It's t____n.
- 5 A What's wrong with this jumper?
B It's got a big h____e in it.

Wordlist 57–64

57	cupboard (n) filming cabinet (n) photocopier (n) printer (n) shelf (n) waste bin (n) do some filming (v) do some photocopying (v) go on the Internet (v) go to a meeting (v) have a break (v) have a day off (v) make a phone call (v) make an appointment (v) send an email (v) send a letter (v)	/'kʌbəd/ 'fai�m ,kæbiນet/ 'fəutəukɒpi(r)/ 'printə(r)/ 'self/ 'weist bɪn/ ,du: səm 'failŋ/ ,du: səm 'fəutəukɒpiŋ/ ,gəu ɒn ði 'ɪntənet/ ,gəu tu ə 'mi:tŋ/ ,hæv ə 'breik/ ,hæv ə dei 'ɒf/ ,meik ə 'feun ,ko:l/ ,meik ən ə'pɔ:ntment/ ,send ən 'i:meil/ ,send ə 'le:tə(r)/	61	air conditioner (n) clock radio (n) dishwasher (n) DVD player (n) electric fan (n) hairdryer (n) heater (n) kettle (n) light bulb (n) microwave (n) shaver (n) toaster (n) vacuum cleaner (n) washing machine (n) clean the car (v) clean the windows (v) cook the dinner (v) do the shopping (v) do the ironing (v) do the washing up (v) lay the table (v) make breakfast (v) make the beds (v) take out the rubbish (v) tidy the garden (v) tidy the room (v)	/'eə(r) kəndi:ʃənə(r)/ ,klɒk 'reidiəʊ/ 'drɪʃwəʃə(r)/ ,di: vi: 'di: ,pleɪə(r)/ ,lektrik 'fæn/ 'he:draɪə(r)/ 'hi:tə(r)/ 'ketl/ 'la:t bɒlb/ 'maɪkro:weɪv/ 'servə(r)/ 'təʊstə(r)/ 'vækjuəm ,kli:nə(r)/ 'wɒʃɪŋ mə,ʃɪ:n/ ,klim ðə 'ka:(r)/ ,klim ðə 'windəuz/ ,kuk ðə 'dmə(r)/ ,du: ðə 'ʃəpɪŋ/ ,du: ði 'aɪənɪŋ/ ,du: ðə wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ ,ler ðə 'terbl/ ,meik 'brekfəst/ ,meik ðə 'bedz/ ,teik aut ðə 'rʌbɪʃ/ ,taidi ðə 'ga:dn/ ,taidi ðə 'ru:m/
58	don't have to (modal) have to (modal) must (modal) mustn't (modal)	/də:ʊnt 'hæv tu/ 'hæv tu/ /mʌst/ /'mʌsn̄t/	62	should (modal) shouldn't (modal) caution (n) floor (n) Mind your head. (exp) slippery (exp) touch (exp) warning (n)	/ʃʊd/ /ʃʊdn̄t/ /'kɔ:sn/ /flɔ:(r)/ ,mam:d yo: 'hed/ /'slipəri/ /tʌtʃ/ /'wɔ:rnɪŋ/
59	a couple of hours (exp) an hour (exp) an hour and a half (exp) an hour and a quarter half an hour (exp) two and a half hours (exp) by car (adv) come home (v) journey (n) rush hour (n) school run (n) summer (n) take (time) (v) take the train (v) traffic jam (n)	/ə ,kʌpl əv 'aʊəz/ 'ən 'aʊə(r)/ 'ən ,aʊə(r) ənd ə 'ha:f/ 'ən ,aʊə(r) ənd ə 'kwɔ:tə(r)/ 'ha:f ən 'aʊə(r)/ ,tu: ənd ə ha:f 'aʊə(r)z/ /baɪ 'kə:(r)/ /kʌm 'həum/ /'dʒə:ni/ /'raʃ aʊə(r)/ /'sku:l rən/ /'sʌmə(r)/ /teɪk/ /teɪk ðə 'treɪn/ /'træfɪk dʒæm/	63	agree (v) I don't think so. (exp) In my opinion, ... (exp) good idea (n) domestic job (n) housework (n) introduce a law (v) pass a law (v) share (v)	/'əgrɪ:/ /ai ,də:ʊnt 'θrɪŋk səʊ/ /in 'mai əpɪnjən/ /gʊd ar'dɪə/ /də'mestɪk dʒəb/ /'haʊswɜ:k/ /intrə,dju:s ə 'lo:/ /pa:s 'ə lo:/ /ʃe:(r)/
60	Come on in. (exp) surprise Take a seat. (exp) accept (v) hard (adj) have a look (v) I don't believe it! (exp) refuse (v) subject (n)	/,kʌm ɒn 'ɪn/ /sə'prائز/ /,teik ə 'si:t/ /ək'sept/ /ha:d/ /hæv ə 'lu:k/ /ai ,də:ʊnt bi'lɪv ɪt/ /rɪ'fju:z/ /'sʌbdʒikt/	64	It isn't working. (exp) It's damaged. (exp) It's got a hole in it. (exp) It's leaking. (exp) It's scratched. (exp) It's torn. (exp) exchange (n) receipt (n) refund (n)	/ɪt ,ɪznt 'wɜ:kɪŋ/ /ɪts 'dæmɪdʒd/ /ɪts ɡɒt ə 'həul ɪn ɪt/ /ɪts 'li:kɪŋ/ /ɪts skrætʃt/ /ɪts tɔ:n/ /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ /rɪ'si:t/ /rɪ:fʌnd/

Review 65–72

Vocabulary

1a Look around you. Write six things that you can see.
a cupboard

b What is each thing made of?
The cupboard is made of wood.

c Write four more materials.

2 Match the computer words with the definitions.

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 click <u>b</u> | a turn off your computer |
| 2 restart <u> </u> | b press on a button on the mouse |
| 3 quit <u> </u> | c you see icons and windows on this |
| 4 shut down <u> </u> | d you save your files here |
| 5 a folder <u> </u> | e finish using a program |
| 6 the desktop <u> </u> | f turn your computer off then on again |

Grammar

3 Make sentences with the present simple passive.
Use the cues.

- 1 Newspapers and magazines are saved.
- 1 Newspapers and magazines /save.
- 2 Green bins/deliver to people's houses.
- 3 Newspapers/put into the bins.
- 4 The paper/collect.
- 5 It/take to the recycling centre.
- 6 The paper/clean.
- 7 It/use to make newspapers.

4 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple passive of the words in brackets.

- 1 Millions of plastic bottles were sold (sell) last year.
- 2 Only 3% of the bottles (recycle).
- 3 Some of the plastic (use) to make clothes.
- 4 A lot of money (save).
- 5 More recycling centres (open).

5 Choose the correct relative pronoun.

- 1 That's the man *who/which* repaired my car.
- 2 She's the actress *that/which* was in *Titanic*.
- 3 These are the books *who/that* we borrowed.
- 4 This is the CD player *who/which* isn't working.
- 5 People *that/which* are rich aren't always happy.
- 6 Are these the jeans *who/that* you bought?

Skills

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?



Bonfire Night

In 1605 a man named Guy Fawkes tried to destroy the Houses of Parliament in London. His plan failed and he was caught. Every year, on 5 November, people in England celebrate this. Big models of Guy Fawkes are made from newspaper and old clothes. People build big fires in their gardens and the guy is put on top and burnt. There are lots of parties and people eat baked potatoes and a special 'bonfire' cake.

- 1 Guy Fawkes tried to destroy London.
- 2 Guy Fawkes' plan didn't fail.
- 3 Bonfire Night is celebrated every year.
- 4 Models of the Houses of Parliament are made from newspaper.
- 5 The guy is burnt outdoors.
- 6 People bake bread and eat fruit.

7 Read Cecilia's details. Complete her profile.

Name: Cecilia

Age: 33

From: Cartagena (north-west Colombia).

Job: secretary

Appearance: quite tall, slim, brown eyes, brown hair

Hobbies: reading, the theatre

Likes: friendly people

Looking for: someone to go to the theatre with

My name's ¹ Cecilia. I'm ² _____ years old and I'm from ³ _____ in ⁴ _____. I'm a ⁵ _____ in a factory. I'm ⁶ _____ and slim. I've got ⁷ _____ and brown hair. My hobbies are reading and ⁸ _____. I like people who are ⁹ _____. I'm looking for someone who wants to ¹⁰ _____.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- 1 Oh, know I that didn't .
- 2 sure you Are ?
- 3 you Yes, 're right .
- 4 's true That .

Wordlist 65–72

65	cardboard (n) cotton (n) glass (n) gold (n) leather (n) metal (n) paper (n) plastic (n) rubber (n) silver (n) wood (n) wool (n) It's made of ... (exp) recycle (v)	/'ka:dbo:k/d/ 'kɒtn/ 'glas/ 'gəuld/ 'leðə(r)/ 'metl/ 'perpə(r)/ 'plæstɪk/ 'rʌbə(r)/ 'sɪlvə(r)/ 'wʊd/ 'wʊl/ 'ɪts 'meɪd əv/ 'ri:saɪkl/	69	attachment (n) cursor (n) desktop (n) file (n) folder (n) icon (n) menu (n) menu bar (n) program (n) window (n) click (v) close (v) delete (v) open (v) quit (v) re-start (v) save (v) scroll down (v) shut down (v)	/'e:tætʃmənt/ 'kɔ:rsə(r)/ 'deskaptop/ 'faɪl/ 'fəuldə(r)/ 'aɪkən/ 'menju:/ 'menju:,ba:(r)/ 'prəʊgræm/ 'wɪndəu/ 'klik/ 'kləuz/ 'dr'laɪt/ 'əʊpən/ 'kwɪt/ 'ri:stɑ:t/ 'seɪv/ 'skrəʊl 'dəʊn/ 'ʃʌt 'dəʊn/
66	build (v) by hand (adv) check (v) colleague (n) destroy (v) explosion (n) history programme (n) hobby (n) model (n) normal (adj) plan (n) plant (n) produce (v) real (adj) second (n) (a) sixth (n)	/bɪld/ 'baɪ 'hænd/ 'tʃek/ 'kɒli:g/ 'dr'stroɪ/ 'ɪk'spləʊzʃn/ 'histri ,prəʊgræm/ 'hɒbi/ 'modl/ 'nɔ:ml/ 'plæn/ 'pla:nt/ 'prə'dju:s/ 'ri:əl/ 'sekənd/ 'sɪksθ/	70	that (pron) which (pron) who (pron)	/ðæt/ 'wɪtʃ/ 'hu:/
67	greetings card (n) anniversary (n) birth (n) Christmas (n) death (n) Father's Day (n) Mother's Day (n) Valentine's Day (n) celebrate (v) dead (n) festival (n) rainy season (n) relative (n)	/'gri:tɪŋz ,ka:d/ 'ænɪ'versəri/ 'bɜ:θ/ 'krɪsməs/ 'deθ/ 'fɑ:ðə(r)z ,deɪ/ 'mʌðə(r)z ,deɪ/ 'væləntaɪnз ,deɪ/ 'selbret/ 'ded/ 'festɪvl/ 'reini ,sɪzn/ 'relatɪv/	71	active (adj) businessman (n) city professional (n) drunk (adj) ex-partner (n) honest (adj) interest (n) Internet dating (n) last (v) love life (n) online (adj) ordinary-looking (adj) outdoor activity (n) profile (n) psychologist (n) sporty (adj) suburbs (n pl)	/'æktyv/ 'bɪznæsmæn/ 'sɪti prə'feʃənl/ 'drʌŋk/ 'eks 'pa:tne(r)/ 'ɒnɪst/ 'ɪntrɛst/ 'ɪntənet 'deɪtɪŋ/ 'la:st/ 'ləv laɪf/ 'a,ɒn'lam/ 'ɔ:dnri ,lʊkɪŋ/ 'aʊtdɔ:(r) æk'trəti/ 'prəʊfəl/ 'sɑ:kɒlədʒɪst/ 'spɔ:tɪ/ 'sʌbɜ:bz/
68	Are you sure? (exp) That's true. (exp) right (adj) block (n) meanwhile (adv) sign (v) tell (v) work (v)	/'a: ju: 'ʃɔ:(r)/ 'ðæts tru:/ 'raɪt/ 'blɒk/ 'mi:nwɔ:l/ 'saɪn/ 'tel/ 'wɜ:k/	72	adaptor (n) architect (n) carry (v) civil engineer (n) electrical appliance (n) football pitch (n) plug (n) relation (n) screen (n) screensaver (n) stadium (n) pipe (n)	/'ə'dæptə(r)/ 'ɑ:kٹɪkt/ 'kærɪ/ 'sɪvl endʒɪ'nɪə(r)/ 'ɪ,lektrɪkl ə'plaɪəns/ 'fʊtbɔ:l pɪtʃ/ 'plæg/ 'ri'leɪʃn/ 'skrɪ:n/ 'skrɪ:nseɪvə(r)/ 'sterdiəm/ 'paɪp/

Review 73–80

Vocabulary

1 Complete the phrasal verbs.

away up back on for down

- 1 Oh, you're busy. I'll come back later.
- 2 Put on a jumper, or you'll be cold.
- 3 The photocopier has broken down.
- 4 What are you looking at?
- 5 Turn up the TV. We can't hear it.
- 6 Don't throw away that letter. I need it.

2a Choose the correct word.

- 1 My job is *boring/bored* and my boss is always *miserable/proud*. She was *annoying/annoyed* this morning because I was late.
- 2 Benji was *exciting/excited* about going scuba-diving for the first time, but he was also a little *worrying/worried*. However, it was really *interesting/interested*.

b How do you feel now? Why?

Grammar

3 Put the time expressions in the correct column.

ages	a few years	last Monday	July
1987	a long time	two months	three o'clock

for	since
ages	last Monday

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect or the past simple.

- 1 I'm divorced. I was married for six years. (be)
- 2 We were here for a long time and we like it. (live)
- 3 He played the piano since he was 12. (play)
- 4 I have been here since one o'clock. (be)
- 5 She's retired. She worked in a shop for 40 years. (work)

5 Make questions and sentences with the second conditional. Use the cues.

- 1 Would you help him if he asked you?
- 2 you/help/him/if/he/ask/you?
- 3 She/do/more exercise/if/she/have/more time.
- 4 If/I/lose/my job/I/find/another.
- 5 If/Yanni/find/some money/he/not/spend it.
- 6 We/save/our dog/if/our house/be/on fire.
- 7 you/marry me/if/I/win the lottery?

Skills

6a Read the text. Answer the questions.



I still live in Leeds and am happily married with three children.



I live in Bristol with my husband and our daughter, Jane. I'm a doctor. We left Leeds in 1992.



Divorced, living in Leeds, two sons. I'd love to hear from old friends.



Accountant in New York. Left England and spent five years teaching in Chile. Single.

1 Which people have moved to another place?
Kerry, Jim.

2 How many people have got children?

3 Who isn't married?

4 Which countries has Jim lived in?

5 Who has changed his/her job?

b Write an entry for a school website for yourself.

7 Complete the note.

just	dear	presents	delicious
thank you	wishes	hope	really

¹ Dear Miriam

We're ² writing to say ³ for the Christmas ⁴ that you sent. The chocolates were ⁵ and we ⁶ like the fruit bowl.

⁷ to see you soon.

Best ⁸

Julia and Phil

Wordlist 73–80

73	break down (v) come back (v) come in (v) get up (v) go away (v) go out (v) look after (v) look back (v) look down (v) look for (v) look up (v) put on (v) switch off (v) switch on (v) take off (v) throw away (v) try on (v) turn down (v) turn up (v)	/breɪk 'daʊn/ /kʌm 'bæk/ /kʌm 'ɪn/ /get 'ʌp/ /gəʊ e'wei/ /gəʊ 'aʊt/ /lʊk 'a:tʃə(r)/ /lʊk 'bæk/ /lʊk 'daʊn/ /lʊk fə:(r)/ /lʊk 'ʌp/ /pʊt 'ɒn/ /swɪtʃ 'ɒf/ /swɪtʃ 'ɒn/ /terk 'ɒf/ /θrəʊ e'wei/ /trai 'ɒn/ /tɜ:n 'daʊn/ /tɜ:n 'ʌp/	77	annoyed (adj) annoying (adj) bored (adj) confused (adj) confusing (adj) embarrassed (adj) embarrassing (adj) excited (adj) exciting (adj) frightened (adj) frightening (adj) hungry (adj) interested (adj) miserable (adj) proud (adj) relaxed (adj) surprised (adj) thirsty (adj) tired (adj) tiring (adj) worried (adj)	/ə'nɔɪd/ /ə'nɔɪŋ/ /bɔ:d/ /kən'fju:zd/ /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ /ɪm'bærəst/ /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ /ɪk'sa:tɪd/ /ɪk'sa:tɪŋ/ /fraɪtnɪd/ /fraɪtnɪŋ/ /hʌŋgrɪ/ /ɪntrəstɪd/ /'mɪzrəbl/ /praʊd/ /rɪ'lækst/ /sə'praɪzd/ /θɜ:sti/ /tɑ:rəd/ /tɑ:rərnɪ/ /wʌrid/
74	away (adv) each other (pron) for (prep) boring (adj) lovely (adj) meat (n) nearly (adv) since (prep) vegetarian (n)	/ə'wei/ /i:tʃ 'ʌðə(r)/ /fɔ:(r)/ /'bɔ:riŋ/ /'lʌvli/ /mi:t/ /'ni:li/ /səns/ /vedʒə'teəriən/	78	certificate (n) document (n) get out (v) on fire pet (n) replace (v) valuable (adj) wallet (n) would (modal)	/sə'tifikət/ /dɒkjumənt/ /,get 'aʊt/ /,ɒn 'faɪə/ /pet/ /ri'pleɪs/ /'væljjuəbl/ /'wɒlt/ /wʊd/
75	How are you? (exp) It's good to see you. (exp) event (n) former (adj) free time (n) insurance company (n) raise money (v) reunion (n) same (adj)	/,haʊ ə 'ju:/ /ɪts, ɡʊd tə 'si: ju:/ /i'vent/ /'fɔ:rmə(r)/ /,'fri: 'taɪm/ /ɪn'ʃʊərəns, kʌmpəni/ /reɪz 'mʌni/ /ri:'jʊnɪən/ /seɪm/	79	after a while (exp) again and again (exp) at first (exp) for a long time (exp) for a (short) while (exp) in the end (exp) material things (n pl) memory (n) psychology (n) skydiving (n)	/,æftə(r) ə 'waɪl/ /ə'gen ənd ə,gen/ /æt 'fɜ:st/ /fɔ:(r) ə ,lɒŋ 'taɪm/ /fɔ:(r) ə ,ʃɔ:t 'waɪl/ /,ɪn ði 'end/ /mə'tɪəriəl θɪŋz/ /'meməri/ /sə'kɒplədʒi/ /'skaɪdaɪvɪŋ/
76	answer the phone (v) hang up (v) I'll try his mobile. (exp) no reply (exp) re-charge (v) ring (v) empty (adj) on the way (exp) solicitor (n)	/'a:nse ðə ,fəʊn/ /hæŋ 'ʌp/ /aɪl ,trai hɪz 'məʊbaɪl/ /nəʊ rr'plaɪ/ /ri:t'zɑ:dʒ/ /rɪŋ/ /'empti/ /ɒn ðə 'wei/ /sə'lisɪtə(r)/	80 & Epilogue	All the best (exp) Best wishes (exp) Hope to see you soon. (exp) I hope you're well. (exp) I'm just writing to say ... (exp) Just a note to say ... (exp) Love (exp) Thank you for ... (exp) calm down (exp) stupid (adj)	/ɔ:l ðə 'best/ /best 'wɪʃɪz/ /,həʊp tu ,sɪ: ju 'su:n/ /aɪ ,həʊp jo: 'wel/ /aɪm dʒʌst ,raɪtnɪ tə seɪ/ /dʒʌst ə ,nəʊt tə seɪ/ /ʌv/ /'θæŋk ju: fɔ:(r)/ /kɑ:m 'daʊn/ /'stjur:pɪd/

Grammar reference

Lessons 1–4

~~To be~~

Statements

Positive

	Positive	Negative
I	'm	I 'm not
He	's	He isn't
She	(is)	She (is not)
It	married.	It Italian.
We	're	We aren't
You	(are)	You (are not)
They		They

Questions

To make questions with *to be* we put the verb in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He is from Korea.

Question: Is he from Korea? Yes, he is.
No, he isn't.

Statement: They are married.

Question: Are they married? Yes, they are.
No, they aren't.

2 wh- questions

Where are you from?

When is your birthday?

~~Have / has got~~

We use *have / has got* to talk about:

possessions I've got a car.

family Have you got any brothers and sisters?

descriptions He's got short hair.

Positive and negative statements

I	've	
You	(have)	
We	haven't	
They	(have not)	a mobile phone.
He	's	two brothers.
She	(has)	dark hair.
It	hasn't	
	(has not)	

Questions

To make questions with *have got*, we put *have / has* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He has got a brother.

Question: Has he got a brother? Yes, he has.
No, he hasn't.

Statement: You have got my address.

Question: Have you got my address? Yes, I have.
No, I haven't.

2 wh- questions

How many children have you got?

What kind of car has she got?

Lessons 5–8

~~Present simple~~

We use the present simple for:

1 permanent states

I like chocolate.
They live in Hong Kong.

2 regular activities

We get up at six o'clock.
She plays tennis on Saturdays.

~~Positive statements~~

I		
You	live	
We	work	
They		in France.
He		
She	lives	
It	works	

~~Spelling~~

Verbs ending in -ss, -sh, -ch or -o, add -es.	miss	misses
	finish	finishes
	watch	watches

When the verb ends in -y, we change the -y to -ies.

go	goes
----	------

study	studies
-------	---------

Grammar reference

Negative statements

I				
You	don't			
We	(do not)		live	
They			work	here.
He				
She	doesn't			
It	(does not)			

yes / no questions

	I			
Do	you			
	we		live	
	they		work	in India?
	he			
Does	she			
	it			

NOTE In negatives and questions we use the infinitive form of the verb.

She doesn't live here.

~~NOT She doesn't lives here.~~

Does he play rugby?

~~NOT Does he plays rugby?~~

Short answers

Positive --			Negative	
I			I	
you	do.		you	don't.
we			we	(do not)
Yes,	they		No,	they
he			he	
she	does.		she	doesn't.
it			it	(does not)

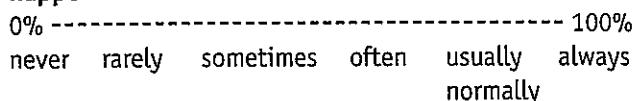
wh- questions

Where do you live?

When **does** he go to work?

Advantages of frequency

1 Adverbs of frequency show how often something happens.



2 We put the adverb of frequency:

- after the verb *to be* She's always here at 4.30.
 - in front of a normal verb We often eat at this café.
 - between an auxiliary They don't usually work
and the main verb on Sundays.

Prepositions of time

1 We use *in* with:

years	in 2003
months	in September
seasons	in winter
parts of the day	in the afternoon

BUT at night

2 We use *on* with:

days	on Tuesday
dates	on 9 August
parts of a specific day	on Monday morning

3 We use *at* with:

times at seven o'clock
the weekend at the weekend

Lessons 9–12

Positive and negative statements

卷之三

I	was		
He	wasn't		
She	(was not)	at work	last week.
It		on holiday	yesterday.
We	were	away	
You	weren't		
They	(were not)		

Grammar reference

Regular verbs

NOTE The past simple is the same for all subjects.

For most verbs, we add **-ed**.

play	played
watch	watched

When the verb ends in **-e**, we add **-d**.

close	closed
like	liked

When the verb ends in a short vowel and a single consonant, we double the consonant and add **-ed**.

drop	dropped
grab	grabbed

When the verb ends in **-y**, we change the **-y** to **-ied**.

hurry	hurried
-------	---------

NOTE When the verb ends in **-t** or **-d**, we pronounce the final syllable /ɪd/:

wanted /wɒntɪd/

needed /ni:dɪd/

Irregular verbs

Many common verbs have an irregular past form.

go They **went** skiing last month.

see I **saw** that film yesterday.

See the list of irregular verbs on page 123.

Negative statements

I

He

She

didn't cook the meal.

It

(did not) go shopping.

We

have lunch.

You

They

NOTE After **didn't** we use the infinitive form of the verb.

We **didn't like** the play.

~~NOT We didn't liked~~ the play.

He **didn't go** to work.

~~NOT He didn't went~~ to work.

because and so

1 We use **because** to give a reason or cause.

I **didn't go** to work, **because** I was ill.

2 We use **so** to show a result or effect.

I was ill, **so** I **didn't go** to work.

Lessons 13–16

Years

We normally give years like this:

1853 eighteen fifty-three 2042 twenty forty-two

1902 nineteen oh two

NOTE For 2000 to 2009 we say *two thousand (and) ...*
2004 two thousand and four

Past simple: questions and short answers

The verb *to be*

To make questions with *to be* we put the verb in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: She **was** on holiday.

Question: Was she on holiday? Yes, she **was**.
No, she **wasn't**.

Statement: They **were** at home.

Question: Were they at home? Yes, they **were**.
No, they **weren't**.

2 wh- questions

Where **were** you last week?

When **was** the party?

Regular and irregular verbs

yes/no questions

I	
he	
she	like the film?
Did	it go skiing?
we	pay the bill?
you	
they	

Short answers

Positive

I	
he	
she	
Yes,	it did.
we	
you	
they	

Negative

I	
he	
she	
No,	it didn't.
we	
you	
they	

Common reference

3 wh- questions

What did you do?

When did they leave?

NOTE In questions we use the infinitive form of the verb.

Did you stay in a hotel?

NOT Did you stayed in a hotel?

What did you buy?

NOT What did you bought?

Infinitives for purposes

We use an infinitive to show why somebody does something.

We went to the shops.

Why did you go?

We went to the shops to buy a new computer.

Lessons 17–20

Present continuous

1 We use the present continuous to say what is happening at the moment.

They're playing football at the moment.

I'm wearing jeans today.

2 We make the present continuous with the verb *to be* and the -ing form of the verb (the present participle).

Statements

Positive

I'm
(am)

He's
She's
It's
We're
You're
They're

Negative

I'm not
(am) not

He isn't
She (is not)
It listening.
jogging.
We aren't
You (are not)
They

Spelling

1 For verbs that end in -e, we remove the -e and add -ing.

write writing

use using

2 For verbs with a short vowel and only one consonant, we double the consonant and add -ing.

run running

stop stopping

Questions

To make questions we put the verb *to be* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He is waiting for the bus.

Question: Is he waiting for the bus? Yes, he is.
No, he isn't.

Statement: They are having a break.

Question: Are they having a break? Yes, they are.
No, they aren't.

2 wh- questions

Where are you going?

What is she wearing?

Presentsimple and presentcontinuous

1 We use the present simple for regular activities.

They play tennis on Saturdays.

We often use these expressions with the present simple:

often, always, every day, usually, on Tuesdays

2 We use the present continuous to say what is happening at the moment.

They aren't playing tennis today, because it's raining.
They're watching TV at the moment.

We often use these expressions with the present continuous:

now, at the moment, today, this morning

Strange verbs

We don't normally use these verbs in the present continuous form even when they refer to the present moment:

like, love, prefer, hate, want, need

I want to listen to the radio.

NOT I'm wanting to listen to the radio.

Grammar reference

Lessons 21–24

- 1 We use the past continuous for an activity in progress in the past.

I was waiting for the bus.

The men were having a break.

- 2 We make the past continuous with the past simple of the verb *to be* and the -ing form of the verb (the present participle).

Positive and negative statements

I	was	
He	wasn't	
She	(was not)	going to the bank.
It		having a shower.
We	were	wearing jeans.
You	weren't	
They	were not	

Questions

To make questions we put *was* or *were* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He was wearing a jacket.

Question: Was he wearing a jacket? Yes, he was.
No, he wasn't.

Statement: You were having dinner.

Question: Were you having dinner? Yes, we were.
No, we weren't.

2 wh- questions

Where were they standing?

What was she doing?

Past continuous and past simple

- 1 The past continuous describes an event in progress in the past.

I was having a bath.

- 2 The past simple shows a completed action or event in the past.

The doorbell rang.

- 3 We often use the past continuous and the past simple together. The past continuous sets the scene.

The past simple says what happened. We usually join the clauses with *while*, *as*, or *when*.
While I was having a bath, the doorbell rang.

I was having a bath.

The doorbell rang.

- 4 We use two past simple verbs when two things happened, one after the other.

When the doorbell rang, I got out of the bath.

The doorbell rang.

I got out of the bath.

Lessons 25–28

Articles with geographical names

The

rivers	The Amazon
seas	The Black Sea
oceans	The Atlantic (Ocean)
deserts	The Kalahari (Desert)
mountain ranges	The Alps
groups of islands	The Bahamas
some countries	The USA, The UK, The Czech Republic

No *The*

mountains	Mount Fuji
lakes	Lake Balaton
continents	Africa
countries	Morocco
islands	Sicily

going to

We use *going to* for:

- 1 intentions and decisions

We're going to have a party.

- 2 a definite future

Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

Grammar reference

Positive and negative statements

I	'm (am)	
	'm not (am not)	
He	's (is)	have a sandwich.
She	isn't (is not)	going to go windsurfing.
It		watch a DVD.
We	're (are)	play the piano.
You	aren't (are not)	
They		

Questions

To make questions with *going to*, we put the verb *am*, *is*, or *are* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: She is going to buy a car.

Question: Is she going to buy a car? Yes, she is.
No, she isn't.

Statement: You are going to leave.

Question: Are you going to leave? Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

2 wh- questions

How are you going to travel?

What are you going to do?

Large numbers

1 We separate large numbers with a comma.

25,000 twenty-five thousand
6,000,000 six million

2 We say:

twenty-five thousand kilometres.

NOT twenty-five thousands kilometres.

six million people

NOT six millions of people

Lessons 29–32

Adjectives and adverbs

1 An adjective describes a noun.

He's a **slow** driver.

This is an **easy** exercise.

2 An adverb describes a verb.

He drives **slowly**.

You can do this exercise **easily**.

	Adjective	Adverb
+ <i>ly</i>	slow	slowly
	bad	badly
	careful	carefully
- <i>y + ily</i>	easy	easily
	busy	busily
- <i>le + ly</i>	terrible	terribly
	horrible	horribly
Irregular	good	well
	fast	fast

like/-ing

To talk about likes and dislikes with activities we usually use the *-ing* form of the verb.

Do you like **meeting** new people?

We hate **jogging**.

I prefer **skating** to **skiing**.

For the spelling rules of the *-ing* forms, see Lessons 17–20 above.

one/ones

We normally use **one** or **ones** as a pronoun after an adjective.

Do you like this **coat**?

I prefer the black **one**. (i.e. the black coat)

Can I have a look at those bags, please?

The big **ones** or the small **ones**? (i.e. the big bags or the small bags)

Grammar reference

Lessons 33–36

Present perfect

1 We use the present perfect to talk about experiences in our life up to the present.

I've **ridden** a camel.

Have you ever **done** yoga?

We often use **ever** and **never** with the present perfect.

Have you ever been to Brazil?

I've never flown in a helicopter.

Positive and negative statements

I	've	
You	(have)	
We	haven't	seen the Pyramids.
They	(have not)	slept in a tent.
He	's	worked abroad.
She	(has)	been to Russia.
It	hasn't	
	(has not)	

2 We make the present perfect with the verb **have/has** and the past participle of the verb.

To form regular past participles, we add **-ed** to the verb stem.

play played

live lived

This is the same as the regular past. (See Lessons 9–12 above for spelling rules.)

3 Verbs with an irregular past simple also have an irregular past participle.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
do	did	done
see	saw	seen
take	took	taken

See the list of irregular verbs on page 123.

Questions

To make questions with the present perfect, we put **have/has** in front of the subject.

1 **yes/no** questions and short answers

Statement: He has worked abroad.

Question: Has he worked abroad? Yes, he has.
No, he hasn't.

Statement: You **have** eaten sushi.

Question: Have you eaten sushi? Yes, I have.
No, I haven't

2 **wh-** questions

How many times **have you** been to Australia?

What sports **have you** played?

been and gone

1 In the present perfect we use **been** instead of **gone** when we are talking about our experiences.

Have you ever **been** to Indonesia?

Yes, I have.

I've never **been** hang-gliding.

2 **Been** means **go and come back**.

I've **been** to Berlin. I'm not in Berlin now.
He's **gone** to Berlin. He's in Berlin now.

Present perfect with present result

We use the present perfect for a past action with a result in the present. We don't know when the action happened, and it isn't important.

They've **gone** to China. They're in China now.
A storm has **destroyed** the bridge. You can't use the bridge now.
She's **lost** her keys. She can't find her keys now.

Lessons 37–40

Possessive adjectives

We use a possessive adjective when we talk about a part of the body.

Her leg's swollen.

I've hurt my hand.

You've got a bruise on your leg.

Present perfect and past simple

1 The present perfect links the past with the present.

Now.

We use it for:

– a past action with a result in the present.

She's **gone out**. She isn't at home now.

We've **had lunch**. We aren't hungry now.

Grammar reference

- experiences up to the present.

I've been to New York three times. (up to now)
He's never broken his arm. (up to now)

- 2 The past simple describes a completed action in the past.



We use it when:

- we are interested in the action itself not the effect.
I've hurt my leg. I fell off a ladder.
- when we are interested in the actual time of the event.
I saw John yesterday.

NOTE When there is a past time reference (*yesterday, last year, in November*), we must use the past simple, not the present perfect.

I saw John yesterday.

NOT I've seen John yesterday.

Lessons 41–44

Expressing quantity

- 1 Some nouns are countable. They have a singular and a plural form.

You need an apple. You need some apples.

- 2 Some nouns are uncountable. They have only one form.
You need some fruit.

- 3 These things are usually uncountable:

- Drinks coffee, tea, wine, water, beer, milk
- Food which you only eat part of bread, cheese, fish meat
- Things which you only use part of toothpaste, shampoo, soap
- Materials paper, wood, plastic
- Some general words music, money, information

- 4 We use these articles and quantity expressions with countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable nouns

	Singular a/an	You need a knife. He's got an apple.
	some/any	You need some strawberries. We haven't got any strawberries.
Plural	How many not many a few	Have you got any apples? How many apples do you need? We don't need many apples. We need a few blackcurrants.

Uncountable nouns

some/any

You need some bread.

One form

We haven't got any milk.

How much
not much
a little

Have you got any fruit?

How much bread do you need?

We don't need much bread.

We need a little milk.

- 5 To talk about quantities of an uncountable noun we use quantity expressions, e.g.:

a bottle of

a kilo of

a slice of

a box of

a piece of

We've got a bottle of water.

You need three bottles of water.

Can I have a slice of bread?

Here are two slices of bread.

But/However

- We use **but** and **however** to contrast two things. Note the difference in punctuation.

I don't eat a lot. I still put on weight.

I don't eat a lot, **but** I still put on weight.

I don't eat a lot. **However**, I still put on weight.

Lessons 45–48

Comparatives and superlatives

- 1 We use a comparative to compare two people, places or things.

Karen is **older** than Mark.

After a comparative we normally use **than**.

- 2 We use a superlative to compare more than two people, places or things.

Salim is **the oldest** person in our class.

We must have **the** before a superlative.

This is **the smallest** restaurant.

NOT This is **smallest** restaurant.

After a superlative we normally use **in**.

This is the **busiest** street in our town.

NOT This is **the busiest** street of our town.

Grammar reference

Spelling

1 To make the comparative of adjectives we add **-er**.

To make the superlative of adjectives we add **-est**.

young	younger	the youngest
long	longer	the longest

2 For adjectives that end in **-e**, we add **-r** or **-st**.

large	larger	the largest
nice	nicer	the nicest

3 For adjectives with a short vowel and only one consonant, we double the consonant and add **-er** or **-est**.

hot	hotter	the hottest
big	bigger	the biggest

4 For adjectives that end in **-y**, we remove the **-y** and add **-ier** or **-iest**.

busy	busier	the busiest
easy	easier	the easiest

5 For adjectives with two or more syllables (where the second syllable is not **-y**), we do not add **-er** or **-est**. We put **more** or **the most** in front of the adjective.

popular	more popular	the most popular
interesting	more interesting	the most interesting

6 Some adjectives are irregular.

good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst
far	further	the furthest

(not) as ... as

We can use **(not) as ... as** to compare people, places and things.

This café isn't as busy as that one.

Our new neighbours aren't as friendly as our old neighbours.

too/ enough

We use **too** and **enough** to say why something isn't right.

These shoes are **too** small.

They aren't big **enough**.

NOT They aren't **enough** big.

This shirt is **too** short.

It isn't long **enough**.

Lessons 49–52

Future with *will*

1 We use the future with ***will*** to make predictions or general statements about the future.

In the future people **will live** on the Moon.

We'll **be** late for the meeting.

Positive and negative statements

I		
He	'll	
She	(will)	be late.
It	won't	work from home.
We	(will not)	pay the bill.
You		
They		

2 To make questions with ***will***, we put ***will*** in front of the subject.

yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: We **will** use cash.

Question: **Will** we use cash? Yes, we **will**.
No, we **won't**.

wh- questions

How **will** people pay for things?

Where **will** we live?

Lessons 53–56

-ing (gerunds)

1 When we talk about an activity we normally use the **-ing** form of the verb (the gerund).

We **love** **skiing**.

NOT We **love** **ski**.

I've never tried **scuba-diving**.

NOT I've never tried **scuba-dive**.

2 We don't normally use an article with a gerund.

Horse **riding** is great.

NOT The horse **riding** is great.

My favourite activity is **reading**.

NOT My favourite activity is **the reading**.

Grammar reference

First conditional

- 1 We use first conditionals to talk about the real or probable results of an action or event.
If you **get up** late, you'll miss your bus.
- 2 We use the present simple in the *if* clause and the future with *will* in the main clause.
if clause main clause
If it **rains**, we **won't go** to the beach.
NOT If it **will rain**, we **won't go** to the beach.
- 3 The *if* clause can come before or after the main clause. If it comes before the main clause, we put a comma at the end of the *if* clause.
If it rains, we won't go to the beach.
We won't go to the beach if it rains.
- 4 *if/when*
We use *if* for a possible condition. We use *when* for a definite condition.
I'll phone you *if* the train is late.
I'll phone you *when* I arrive.

Time clauses

We use the first conditional form with time clauses as well as *if* clauses. Time clauses start with words such as:
before, after, when, while

We'll go swimming **before** we **have** lunch.
NOT We'll go swimming **before** we **will have** lunch.

I'll phone him **after** the meeting **finishes**.
When the phone **rings**, I'll answer it.
They'll look after the bags **while** we **have** a meal.

Lessons 57–60

Obligation

- 1 We use *have to/has to* and *must* to show obligation.
We **have to** wait for the visitors.
Jim **has to** work on Sundays.
I **must** go to the bank.
- 2 *Must* and *have to* have the same basic meaning. We normally use *must* when the need comes from the speaker.
I'm hungry. I **must** have a sandwich.

We normally use *have to* when the authority comes from someone else.

I **have to** photocopy these things for the boss.

- 3 We use *have to* with *I, you, we, and they*.
We use *has to* with *he, she, and it*.
I **have to** go to the meeting.
She **has to** go to the meeting, too.
Must is the same for all subjects.
I **must** leave.
He **must** leave, too.
- 4 The negative forms of *have to* and *must* have different meanings.
Don't/Doesn't have to means that it is not obligatory or necessary.
You **don't have to** go to work tomorrow. It's Saturday.
Mustn't means that it is not allowed.
You **mustn't** park there. It's private property.

Lessons 61–64

Subject and object questions

- 1 In a *wh-* question with the question words, *What* and *Who*, the question word can be the subject or the object of the verb.
- 2 When the question word is the object, we use the normal question structure.
What **do** you **do** in the house?
Who **does** she **meet** at lunchtime?
- 3 When the question word is the subject, we use a statement form of the verb.
What **wakes** you **up** in the morning?
Who **cleans** the windows?

Should/shouldn't

- 1 We use *should/shouldn't* to give advice.
You **should** stay in bed if you're ill.
You **shouldn't** go to work.
- 2 *Should/Shouldn't* is a modal verb. It's the same for all subjects.
She **should** use a stepladder.
You **shouldn't** stand there.
- 3 *Should(n't)* is followed by an infinitive without *to*.
We **should** eat more fruit.
NOT We **should** ~~to~~ eat more fruit.

Grammar reference

Lessons 65–68

Passives

1 These two sentences have the same meaning:

Active voice: People take things to the recycling centre.

Passive voice: Things are taken to the recycling centre.

People is the subject of the active verb.

Things is the subject of the passive verb.

2 We use the passive voice when the action is more important than who or what did it.

Things are taken to the recycling centre.

We don't know (or need to know) who takes them.

3 We make the passive voice with the verb **to be** and a past participle. With a singular subject we use **is**. With a plural subject we use **are**.

The model **is** painted.

The materials **are** recycled.

4 We can use the passive voice in any tense. To make different tenses we change the verb **to be**.

Past simple:

The model **was** painted last week.

The materials **were** recycled.

Lessons 69–72

Relative clauses

1 A relative clause gives more information about an item in a sentence.

I saw the woman.

I saw the woman **who works in the Finance Department**.

2 A relative clause starts with a relative pronoun. We use:

– **who** with people

– **which** with things and animals

– **that** with people, things, and animals.

There's the man **who** lives at number 22.

OR There's the man **that** lives at number 22.

Is this the computer **which** isn't working?

OR Is this the computer **that** isn't working?

3 A relative pronoun can be the subject or the object of a relative clause.

Is this the program? The program isn't working properly.

Is this the program **which** isn't working properly?

Quit the program. You're using **the program**.

Quit the program **which** you're using.

Relative pronouns are the same whether they are the subject or the object.

Lessons 73–76

Phrasal verbs

1 Some verbs in English have two parts. We call these phrasal verbs.

With some phrasal verbs the meaning is clear from the meanings of the two parts.

stand up

sit down

2 With some phrasal verbs we can't work out the meaning from the individual parts.

look after

break down

Present perfect for / since

1 We use the present perfect when an activity started in the past and still continues in the present.

I've worked here for ten years. (And I still work here now.)

2 When the action finished in the past, we use the past simple.

I've worked here for ten years. (I still work here.)

Before that I **worked** in a factory for two years. (But I don't work there now.)

Grammar reference

3 In this context we often use time expressions with **for or since**.

for and since

We use **for** with a period of time

for six months
for nine hours
for a long time
since 1982
since February
since 10 o'clock

We use **since** with a point of time.

NOTE We can't use **since** with the past simple, because it means 'from a point in the past to now'.

I've been here since 10.30.

NOT I was here since 10.30.

Lessons 77–80

Adjectives with -ed or -ing

1 We use adjectives with **-ed** to describe how a person feels.

I'm **excited**. We're going on holiday tomorrow.
We were **frightened**. We watched a horror film.

2 We use adjectives with **-ing** to describe a person, place, or thing.

The holiday was **exciting**.
It was a **frightening** film.

Would: second conditional

We use the conditional form **would** to talk about unlikely or unreal events.

On a perfect day I **would see** all my family.
If he had a year off, he **would write** a book.

Positive and negative statements

I
He
She
It
We
You
They

'd
(would)
wouldn't
(would not)

retire.
go to work.
live in the USA.

Questions

To make questions with **would**, we put **would** in front of the subject.

1 **yes/no** questions and short answers

Statement: You **would retire**.

Question: Would you retire? Yes, I would.
No, I wouldn't.

2 **wh-** questions

What **would you do**?
Where **would she live**?

Second conditional

1 We normally use **would** in a second conditional sentence.

Second conditionals describe unreal, unlikely, or imaginary situations.

If I had more time, I **would travel** round the world.

2 We use the past simple in the **if clause** and **would** in the main clause.

if clause main clause
If I **saw** a fire, I **would phone** the fire brigade.
NOT If I **would see** a fire, I **would phone** the fire brigade.

3 The **if clause** can come before or after the main clause. If it comes before the main clause, we put a comma at the end of the **if clause**.

If we **won** the lottery, we'd buy a boat.
We'd buy a boat if we **won** the lottery.

Audio scripts

1.2

Michael Zofia, this is my wife, Mia.
 Zofia Pleased to meet you, ... sorry. What's your name again?
 Mia It's Mia. M-I-A. Nice to meet you, too.
 Zofia
 Michael Zofia's Polish.
 Mia Oh, really?
 Zofia What about you, Mia? Are you Canadian, too?
 Mia No, I'm not. I'm Chinese.
 Zofia Oh, that's interesting.

3.1

Man OK, can I take some details then? Your first name, please?
 Meryem It's Meryem. That's M-E-R-Y-E-M.
 Man Uh-huh. Thank you. Now what's your surname?
 Meryem It's Yilmaz.
 Man How do you spell that, please?
 Meryem It's Y-I-L-M-A-Z.
 Man Thank you. And what's your date of birth, Ms Yilmaz?
 Meryem The second of June 1980.
 Man So that's oh-two, oh-six, eighty. And what's your nationality?
 Meryem I'm sorry?
 Man Nationality – where are you from?
 Meryem Oh yes, of course. I'm from Turkey.
 Man OK. Now, occupation. What do you do?
 Meryem I'm a chemist.
 Man I see. And are you married?
 Meryem Yes, I am.
 Man Have you got any children?
 Meryem Yes, I have. Two – a girl and a boy.
 Man Oh, how nice. Now, some contact details. What's your address, please?
 Meryem It's number 55 Gleeson Road.
 Man How do you spell Gleeson, please?
 Meryem It's G-L-double-E-S-O-N.
 Man Thank you. And is that here in London?
 Meryem Yes, it is.
 Man OK, and what's the postcode, please?
 Meryem It's NW19 7GH.
 Man Mmm-hm. And can I have a daytime telephone number, please?
 Meryem Well, it's best to use my mobile number. It's oh double seven eight four, five nine three, one six two.
 Man Thank you. And have you got an email address?
 Meryem Yes, it's meryem.yilmaz@abc.com.
 Man Thank you very much. Well I'll send you an email to confirm all these details and I'll see you soon.

8.3

1 Woman Caller Hello, Abbey Dental Practice.
 Hello. My name's Tom Smith.
 I've got an appointment on the thirtieth of March at twenty past three, but I'm afraid I can't make it now.
 Receptionist I see. Would you like to make a new appointment, Mr Smith?
 Caller Yes, please.
 Receptionist Can you come next Thursday in the afternoon?
 Caller What date is that?
 Receptionist It's the eighth of April.
 Caller Yes, that's fine. What time?
 Receptionist Well, I've got two o'clock or twenty to four.
 Caller Oh, twenty to four, please.
 Receptionist Fine. So your new appointment is at three forty on Thursday the eighth of April.
 Caller Thank you very much. Goodbye.
 Receptionist Goodbye.
 2 Receptionist Hello, Lifestyle Therapy Centre.
 Caller Hello. I've got an appointment on the twenty-seventh of January, but I'm afraid I can't make that now.
 Receptionist I see. What time is your appointment?
 Caller It's at ten to twelve.
 Receptionist Ah, yes. Ms Clark?
 Caller Yes, that's right. Could I make a new appointment, please?
 Receptionist Yes, of course. Let me see.
 Caller Can you come on the ninth of February in the morning?
 Receptionist What day is that?
 Caller It's a Monday.
 Receptionist Yes, that's fine. What time?
 Receptionist Well, I've got ten past ten or twenty-past ten.
 Caller Oh, the later time, please.
 Receptionist Fine. So your new appointment is at ten twenty on Monday the ninth of February.
 Caller Thank you very much. Goodbye.
 Receptionist Goodbye.

9.3

I get up at 7.30 and I have a shower. Then I get dressed and I make the bed. I have breakfast and I listen to the radio. Then I go to work.
 I have lunch at one o'clock. After work, I sometimes go shopping or I play tennis with some friends. When I get home, I have dinner. I sometimes do some housework in the evening. I watch the news on TV and then I go to bed. I read a book for a quarter of an hour before I go to sleep.

11.1

At first life was great for me and my wife, Seema. We had two young children, and we both had good jobs. I earned a lot of money, so we had a big house.

But we weren't happy because I didn't spend much time with my family. I left home at 7.30 every morning and I didn't get home till eight o'clock in the evening. I travelled a lot in my job, too, so I was often away at weekends.

Then about five years ago, we were on holiday. It was beautiful, but I couldn't relax. I phoned my office every day. My wife wasn't happy about that.

One day we had a big argument about it, so I went for a walk on the beach. I saw a small house. There was a man in front of the house. When he saw me, he said: 'Hey! It's a beautiful day. Smile!' I stopped to talk to him.

He was a carpenter and he made furniture – beds, tables, chairs. So I said: 'Why aren't you working today?' And he said: 'Well, I made a table last week and I sold it this morning, so we've got enough money.'

That changed my life. When we got home, I left my job. We sold our big house in the suburbs and we moved to a small village in the country. I spend a lot more time with my family now. We soon knew everybody in the village, because Seema got a job as a teacher in the village school.

And me? I make furniture, but I'm not working today. I sold a table yesterday, so today I'm going fishing.

13.3

My parents were born in Chile, but I wasn't. They moved to England in the 1940s.

I was born in Liverpool in 1951. I didn't grow up in Liverpool. We moved to London when I was a baby and I grew up there.

I started school when I was five years old. I enjoyed school.

When I was sixteen I fell in love with a girl in my class. Her name was Charlotte. She was my first girlfriend and I thought she was gorgeous. I went out with her for about a year.

I left school in 1969 and I went to Birmingham University. I studied Physics there. I graduated in 1972 and I got a job with an engineering company.

My wife's name is Diana. She's Australian. I met her in Sydney. We were at a conference there.

We got married in 1980 and we had two children. Then in 1986 my company closed down and I lost my job. That was a hard time. I was thirty-five years old. I had a young family and no job.

I tried two or three other jobs, but they weren't very good. So in 2001 we moved to South Africa. We're still there now. I started my own engineering company and at the moment everything is OK.

Audio scripts

17.2

Clerk Hello. Can I help you?
 Woman Yes. Could I have a ticket to Manchester, please – first class?
 Clerk Are you travelling today?
 Woman Yes.
 Clerk Single or return?
 Woman Single, please.
 Clerk OK. That's fifty-two pounds, please.
 Woman Thank you. What time is the next train, please?
 Clerk The next train is at ten twenty-two. Change at Crewe.
 Woman When is the next direct train?
 Clerk It's at eleven thirty.
 Woman Is that a fast train?
 Clerk Yes, it is. It gets to Manchester at twelve forty-five.
 Woman Oh, that's better. What platform does the eleven thirty train leave from?
 Clerk Platform number six.
 Woman Thank you very much.

19.1

1 Man ... Euston station, please.
 Driver OK. The traffic's very bad this evening.
 Man Yes, it is.
 Driver What time's your train, then?
 Man Seven forty-five.
 Driver Where are you travelling to?
 Man Scotland.
 Driver So, is that seven forty-five the last train then?
 Man Yes, it is.
 Driver Right. Are you from Scotland?
 Man Yes, I am.
 Driver So you're going home, then.
 Man Yes, I am. And my train goes in ten minutes. Are we nearly there?
 Driver Yes, we are, but, like I said, the traffic's very bad. That's the station over there.
 Man Oh, well, look. Can you drop me here? I can walk from here.
 Driver Are you sure?
 Man Yes, this is fine.
 Driver OK. That's eight pounds fifty, then, please.
 Man Here you are.
 Driver Ten pounds. Thank you.
 Man Keep the change.
 Driver Thank you very much. Would you like a receipt?
 Man No, thank you. I haven't got time. Goodbye.
 Driver Bye.

2 Woman Taxi! ... The Western Hotel, please.
 Driver OK. It's chilly today.

Woman Oh yes, it is, but it's a lot colder in Berlin.

Driver So, is that where you're from – Germany?

Woman Yes, it is.

Driver Are you here on holiday, then?

Woman Yes, I am. I'm spending a few days here. It's a lovely city.

Driver Yes. Are you staying at the Western Hotel?

Woman Yes, I am.

Driver Do you like it there?

Woman Yes, it's very nice, thank you.

Driver Right, well. Here we are, the Western Hotel.

Woman Thank you.

Driver That's five pounds fifty, please.

Woman Here you are.

Driver Thank you very much. Enjoy your holiday.

Woman Thank you. Goodbye.

Driver Goodbye.

3 Man Taxi! ... the airport, please.

Driver OK.

Here we are, the airport. Which terminal do you want?

Man Oh, I don't know. It's probably on the ticket. Just a minute. No, I can't see it.

Driver Well. Where are you flying to?

Man To Milan.

Driver Oh, well you need International Departures, then. That's Terminal 2. Terminal 1 is for domestic flights.

Man Thank you.

Driver Well, there was only one terminal till three years ago. Then they opened the new one – Terminal 2.

Man Oh, I see.

Driver So are you from Italy, then?

Man No, I'm not. I'm from Egypt. I'm going to Italy on business.

Driver Oh, right. Well, here we are – Terminal 2.

Man Thank you.

Driver That's ten pounds fifty, please.

Man Here you are. Could I have a receipt, please?

Driver Certainly. There you go.

Man Thank you. Goodbye.

Driver Goodbye. Have a nice flight.

24.3

I come out of the station and I turn right. I go under the bridge and I walk down the hill. At the bottom of the hill there's a park on the left-hand side. I usually walk through the park. In the middle of the park there's a lake. There's a bridge over the lake, but I don't usually go over the bridge. I walk round the lake. It's very nice. When I come out of the park, I turn left and I walk past the sports centre. There's a supermarket on the right hand side. Opposite the supermarket there's a small street. There's a chemist's shop on the corner of the street. My office is at the end of the street.

25.2

1 Jules and Lidia: We sailed across the Pacific Ocean from South America to Asia.

2 Pedro: I flew across Africa. I started in the Canary Islands. I flew across the Sahara Desert to Lake Victoria and I finished at the Indian Ocean.

3 Timo and Selma: We cycled across Europe from north to south. We started in the north at the Arctic Ocean and we cycled down to the Mediterranean.

4 Akane: I ran across North America. I started in New York on the Atlantic Ocean and I ran across the USA and over the Rockies to San Francisco on the Pacific.

26.2

1 Man Do you want to join us for drink this evening, Andy?

Andy Thanks, but I'm going to have an early night.

2 Shana What shall we do this evening, Omar. There's nothing on telly.

Omar Why don't we watch a DVD?

Shana Yes, OK.

3 Man Are you busy this evening, Rosie?

Rosie Yes, I always go to the gym on Wednesdays.

4 Martina Bye. And don't be late this evening,

Bruno Why not?

Martina Don't you remember? The meal with Audrey and James.

5 Bradley Can I use the computer this evening? I want to send some emails.

Woman Sure, Bradley.

6 Roy What shall we do this evening, Emma?

Emma Let's play tennis.

Roy Oh yes. Great idea.

Audio scripts

27.1

Presenter With me this morning are Rachel Morgan from Wales and Stefan Popko from Poland. In October they're going to take part in the Global Challenge race. So Rachel, what is this race?
 Rachel We're going to sail round the world in a yacht.
 Presenter When people normally sail round the world, they go from west to east.
 Rachel Yes. That's because the wind goes from west to east. We're going to sail east to west against the wind.
 Presenter So Stefan, where are you going to go?
 Stefan We're going to sail down the Atlantic Ocean to Argentina. Then round the bottom of South America and across the Pacific Ocean to New Zealand. From there we're going to sail across the Indian Ocean to South Africa and then home.
 Presenter Phew, and how long is that going to take?
 Stefan We're going to travel over fifty-six thousand kilometres. That's going to take about a hundred and fifty days.
 Presenter And how many people are going to be in the race?
 Rachel There are going to be twelve yachts with eighteen people on each yacht. They're going to be from all over the world.
 Presenter And how big are the yachts?
 Stefan They're about twenty-two metres long, so with eighteen people it's going to be very tight. We can only take one kilo of luggage each.
 Presenter One kilo? So the question is ... Why are you going to do it?
 Stefan Because we want to.

29.2

1 Woman Hi, Imran. How's your new boss?
 Imran Oh, she's OK.
 Woman What does she look like?
 Imran Well, she's quite slim. She isn't very tall.
 Woman How old is she?
 Imran I don't know - She's middle-aged.
 Woman What's her hair like?
 Imran Er, she's got medium-length hair.
 Woman Straight?
 Imran Oh, er, no. She's got wavy hair and it's very dark. She's quite pretty, actually.
 2 The police are looking for a man in connection with the robbery. They describe the suspect as quite young, medium height and a bit overweight. He's got very curly, fair hair and blue eyes. He's also got a small moustache. Anyone who sees the man should phone the police on ...

32.2

1 B Excuse me.
 A Yes. Can I help you?
 B Yes. How much are these sports bags, please?
 A The small ones are thirty-two euros and the large ones are fifty euros.
 B Can I have a look at one of the small ones, please?
 A Certainly. Here you are. We have them in black or green.
 B It's very nice, but it's a bit small.
 A Would you like to see one of the large ones?
 B Yes, please.
 A Here you are.
 B Thank you. Yes. I think I prefer the large one. I'll take it.
 A Black or green?
 B Oh, the green one, please. How much is it again?
 A Fifty euros. Anything else?
 B No, thank you.
 A That's fifty euros, then, please.
 2 A Can I help you?
 B Yes. You've got some earrings in the window. Can I have a look at them, please?
 A Can you show me? These ones?
 B Yes, and the ones next to them. Yes, those ones.
 A OK. Here you are.
 B How much are they, please?
 A The gold ones are a hundred and fifteen euros and the silver ones are seventy-two euros.
 B I like the gold ones, but I think I prefer the silver ones.
 A Yes, they're very nice.
 B Yes, ... but no. I'll take these ones, please.
 A The gold ones?
 B Yes.
 A Anything else?
 B No, thank you.
 A That's a hundred and fifteen euros, then, please.

33.2

1 A What kind of programmes do you normally watch, Bob?
 B Well, I don't watch TV a lot, but I always watch the news and the weather forecast. I like documentaries, too, you know like *Our World* and things like that.
 A Do you watch any reality TV shows, like *The House*?
 B No, I don't like them. What about you? Do you watch a lot of TV, Anna?
 A Yes, I suppose, I do. I watch a lot of game shows. My favourite is *Lucky Chance*.
 B Do you like soap operas?
 A Yes. I always watch *Beacon Street*.
 B Do you watch any sports programmes?
 A No, I don't like sport.
 2 A What sort of things do you watch on TV, Julie?
 B I watch a lot of sitcoms, mostly American ones like *Jack and Jessie*. I love that. I like hospital dramas, too. *Emergency* is my favourite hospital drama.
 A Do you watch the news?
 B No, I never watch the news or documentaries or things like that. My parents always watch them, but I've got my own TV, so it's not a problem. What things do you usually watch on TV, Ivor?
 A I usually watch films. I like chat shows, too - like *The Ronnie Melbourne Show*.
 B Do you watch any soaps or sitcoms?
 A No, I don't.

35.1

This is the news with Martin West. The headlines: The heads of government of the EU countries have arrived in Budapest for their latest meeting. Thieves have stolen gold and a large number of diamonds from a bank in Paris.

A tropical storm has hit the coast of South America. Strong winds have destroyed several villages. More than a hundred people have lost their lives.

Two people have died in a fire at a factory in Glasgow.

And some news has just come in. There has been a serious accident on the M5 motorway. A small plane has crashed into a bridge. The police have closed the motorway in both directions between junctions 5 and 7. We have no more information at the moment.

The game show *The Box* has won the Independent award for the best radio programme of the year.

Alan Jones, star of the TV sitcom *The Avenue* has married the programme's writer, Rajni Sekar.

That's all the news for now. More on that accident on the M5 and all the other stories in our next bulletin at nine o'clock. And now the weather forecast ...

Audio scripts

37.2

- 1 A What's the matter?
B I've got a headache.
A Oh, dear. Here, I've got some painkillers.
B Thanks.
- 2 A What's wrong?
B I've hurt my wrist. It's swollen.
A Oh, yes, it is. Put some ice on it.
B Yes, that's good idea. Thanks.
- 3 A What's wrong?
B My arm itches.
A Oh, yes. You've got a rash on it. Here, I've got some cream for it.
B Oh, thanks.
- 4 A What's the matter?
B My nose is bleeding.
A Oh, yes. Here, I've got some tissues.
B Thank you.
- 5 A What's the matter?
B I've cut my hand.
A Oh, dear. Here, I've got some plasters.
B Thank you.
- 6 A What's wrong?
B I've burnt my finger.
A Oh, dear. Here, put it under the cold water.
B OK. Thanks.

38.3

- 1 A What have you done to your elbow, Kathy?
B I've sprained it.
A How did you do that?
B I fell downstairs.
A Really? When did it happen?
B On Thursday.
- 2 A Hi, John. What have you done to your leg?
B I've cut my knee.
A How did you do that?
B I dropped a knife on it in the kitchen. I was wearing shorts.
A Oh, dear. When did it happen?
B Yesterday morning.
- 3 A What have you done to your arm?
B I've bruised my elbow.
A How did you do that?
B I hit it against the car door.
A Ooh, that sounds bad. When did it happen?
B Two days ago.

40.2

- 1 Doctor Good morning. Now what seems to be the problem?
Patient My ear hurts.
Doctor I see. Which ear is it?
Patient My left ear.
Doctor When did it start?
Patient Oh, about two days ago now. Yes, it started on Monday morning.
Doctor Well, can I just have a look at it?
Patient Oh, I see.
Doctor Take this medicine – one capsule four times a day.
Patient OK.
Doctor If it isn't any better by Friday, come back and see me.
Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.
Doctor Goodbye.
- 2 Doctor Good morning. Now what can I do for you?
Patient I've hurt my elbow.
Doctor Your right elbow?
Patient Yes.
Doctor I see. Can I just have a look at it?
Patient Hmm, yes it's swollen. How did you hurt it?
Doctor I see. Well, I think you've just bruised it, but we'd better get an X-ray. Take this letter to the hospital.
Patient OK.
Doctor In the meantime, put some ice on your elbow and take some painkillers.
Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.
Doctor Goodbye.

41.3

- A Are you ready to order?
B Yes. Can I have the grilled salmon, please?
A What kind of potatoes would you like – baked, boiled, or chips?
B Oh, boiled, please.
A And what would you like with that?
B Oh, can I have roasted vegetables, please?
A OK so that's grilled salmon with boiled potatoes and roasted vegetables.
B Thank you.

47.1

- 1 Peter: I usually go to the local shops in the town centre. It's friendlier and more personal. Last year I went to the supermarket for some wine, but the assistants didn't know anything except the price. Now I always go to a small wine shop in the town centre. It isn't as cheap as the supermarket, but the man there knows a lot about wine.
- 2 Susan: When I was a child there were a lot of local shops. There was a baker's, a butcher's, and a greengrocer's. But then they built a big supermarket near the town. Now all the small shops have gone. Well, you can understand it. They weren't as convenient as the supermarket. So we have to go to the supermarket now – at least the parking is easier there.
- 3 Anjit: I always shop at the supermarket because it's more convenient. The shops in the town are only open from nine to five thirty and I'm at work then. They're closed on Sundays, too. The supermarket's open longer hours and every day. And you can buy everything at one shop.
- 4 Birgit: I go to the local shops and the market because I think the food is fresher. If I go to the supermarket, the tomatoes are from South Africa and the lettuce is from India. Why do we bring food from the other side of the world when you can get it from a local farm?
- 5 Troy: I usually shop on the Internet because I can shop twenty-four seven. I order food and things on the Internet and the supermarket delivers everything to my house. It's the easiest way to shop and it's cheaper, too.

Audio scripts

48.2

1 Customer Excuse me. Have you got these shoes in a size five, please?
 Assistant Just a minute. ... Yes, here you are.
 Customer Thanks. I'll just try them on.
 Assistant How are they?
 Customer They're too loose. Have you got them in a smaller size?
 Assistant Just a minute. No, I'm sorry. That's the smallest size.
 Customer Oh, OK. Thanks anyway.
 2 Customer Excuse me. Can I try this jumper on, please?
 Assistant Yes. The changing rooms are over there.
 Customer Thank you.
 Voice Later
 Assistant How is it?
 Customer It isn't big enough. It's too tight on the chest. Have you got it in a larger size?
 Assistant What size is that?
 Customer Small.
 Assistant Do you want to try a medium?
 Customer Yes, please.
 Assistant OK. Just a minute. Yes. Here you are.
 Voice Later
 Assistant Is that big enough?
 Customer Yes. This is more comfortable, thanks. I'll take it.
 Assistant Anything else?
 Customer No, thanks.
 Assistant OK. Well, if you'd just like to come to the till ...
 3 Customer Excuse me. How much are these jeans, please?
 Assistant They're sixty-two pounds.
 Customer Can I try them on, please?
 Assistant Sure. The changing rooms are over there.
 Customer Thank you.
 Voice Later
 Assistant How are they?
 Customer They're too short. Have you got them with a longer leg?
 Assistant Just a minute. Yes. Here you are. Try these.
 Customer Thanks.
 Voice Later
 Assistant Do they fit better?
 Customer Yes. These are long enough, thanks. I'll take them.
 Assistant Anything else?
 Customer No, thanks.
 Assistant That's sixty-two pounds then, please.

49.2

1 A That's nineteen pounds twenty, please.
 B Oh, dear. I haven't got enough money. I've only got seventeen pounds.
 2 A That's sixteen pounds and nine pence, please.
 B Here you are.
 A I'm sorry we don't take credit cards.
 B Oh.
 3 A We need to get a ticket at the machine.
 B Yes, have you got any coins? I haven't.
 A No, I haven't either. I've only got notes.
 4 A This is nice.
 B Yes, it is, but I can't buy it. I haven't had my salary this month yet.
 5 A Oh, erm ...
 B What's the matter?
 A I can't remember my PIN. Is it six eight ... no six nine ... ?
 6 A Thank you. That's two pounds change.
 B Excuse me. I gave you a twenty-pound note. You've only given me change for ten pounds.
 A Oh? Oh, yes, you're right. Sorry about that. Here you are.
 7 A Dad, can I borrow some money?
 B No, I lent you some money last week, and you haven't given it back.
 A But I've spent it.
 8 A What's this? I paid this bill last week.
 B Well, they've sent your cheque back. You didn't sign it.

50.2

1 Hello, Kay. Your visitors phoned. Their plane was late, so they won't arrive before three o'clock. OK? Bye.
 2 Good morning, Kay. This is Farida in Mexico. I've got the photographs. I'll email them to you today. Bye for now.
 3 Hello, darling. I'm sorry, but I won't have time to book the theatre tickets. Can you do it? Thanks. Bye. Oh, I left the money for the cleaner in the kitchen.
 4 Hi, Kay. This is John Morgan. I'm still in Paris, so I'm afraid I'll miss the meeting this afternoon. See you.
 5 Hello, dear. It's your mother. I want to talk to you about your father's birthday. I'll phone you later. Bye. She isn't there. It's one of those answer phone things, you know.
 6 Hello. This is the computer engineer. I'm sorry, but I won't have time to fix your computer today, so I'll fix it tomorrow morning. Bye.
 7 Hey, Mum. I'm going to a party tonight, so I won't need a meal. Oh, and I've borrowed some money. It was in the kitchen. Hope that's OK.
 8 Hello, Mrs Winter. It's Margaret, the cleaner. I can't find my money, and I won't be here next week. I'll be on holiday. So I really ...

53.3

Beth What do you like doing in your free time, Arnold?
 Arnold I like water-skiing.
 Beth Really?
 Arnold Yes, and I like sailing, too.
 Beth Do you like canoeing?
 Arnold It's OK. I don't mind it.
 Beth Have you tried scuba-diving?
 Arnold No, I haven't. I like being on the water, but I don't like being under it.
 Beth Oh, I see. What do you do when you aren't on the water?
 Arnold Not a lot. I like relaxing in the garden, listening to music. You know - doing nothing really.
 Beth Do you like doing DIY?
 Arnold No, I don't. I'm not very good at it. Anyway, what about you? What do you like doing?
 Beth Well, I like swimming.
 Arnold Oh right. So have you tried scuba-diving, then?
 Beth No, I haven't, but I'd like to. It looks great. So what else? Urm ... I like playing tennis.
 Arnold Uh-huh. Are you any good?
 Beth Yes, not bad. But I'm not really into exercise. I don't like going to the gym or jogging.
 Arnold Oh, I see.
 Beth I don't mind doing yoga, but I suppose most of all I like going out with friends. You know, going to restaurants, shopping, things like that.
 Arnold Oh, right, so what's your favourite restaurant?

Audio scripts

56.2

1 Receptionist Good morning, the Angel Hotel.
You're speaking to Vicky. How may I help?
Caller Hello. I'd like to book a room, please.
Receptionist Certainly sir. When for?
Caller For the twenty-fifth of April, please for two nights.
Receptionist Two nights. And is it just one room?
Caller Yes, it is.
Receptionist Just one moment, sir. Yes, that's OK. How many guests is it for?
Caller Just myself.
Receptionist And would you like a single, a double, or a twin room, sir?
Caller A single, please. And I'd like a non-smoking room, if you have one, please.
Receptionist Yes, we do. So that's a single room – non-smoking – for two nights from the twenty-fifth of April.
Caller Yes, that's it.
Receptionist That will be sixty pounds per night.
Caller Does that include breakfast?
Receptionist No, I'm afraid it doesn't. That's for the room only, sir.
Caller OK.
Receptionist What name is it, please?
Caller It's Carlos Gonzalez.
Receptionist Is that G O N Z A L E Z?
Caller Yes.
Receptionist Thank you, and do you have a credit card to confirm the booking?
Caller Yes. It's ...
2 Receptionist Hotel Jumbo. Buon giorno.
Caller Oh, hello. I'd like to make a reservation, please.
Receptionist Certainly, madam. When for?
Caller For the sixth of November, please.
Receptionist How many nights?
Caller Just one night, please.
Receptionist One moment, please. And how many guests?
Caller Two – myself and a friend.
Receptionist And would you like a double or a twin room?
Caller A twin room, please.
Receptionist Yes, that's fine. We have a twin room for the sixth of November.
Caller We'd like a room with a balcony, if you have one, please.
Receptionist Erm. Yes, we do. So that's a twin room with a balcony for the sixth of November – just one night.
Caller Yes, that's right.
Receptionist That will be one hundred euros per night – bed and breakfast.
Caller Thank you.
Receptionist What name is it, please?
Caller It's Carol Mills. That's M I double L S.
Receptionist Thank you, and can I take a credit card number to confirm the booking?
Caller Yes, of course. It's ...

57.3

Sayed Hello Josh.
Josh Hi, Sayeed. How are you?
Sayeed Fine, thanks. How was your day today?
Josh It was OK.
Sayeed What did you do?
Josh Well, when I got to work I made a few phone calls and I sent some emails. I had a break at about eleven and then I went to a meeting.
Sayed Uh-huh.
Josh After lunch I made a couple of appointments for next week. Then I did some filing and I went on the Internet. So a normal day really. What about you, Sayeed? How was your day?
Sayeed Oh, I worked at the weekend, so I had a day off today.
Josh Lucky you. So what did you do, then?

58.3

1 I live in a small town near Venice and I work in the city centre. I travel into the city by train. I live near the station so I don't have to drive. I take the train to the central station in Venice, and from the station I get the Vaporetto or waterbus to St Mark's Square. The journey takes about an hour and a half from my home to my office. It's OK, but in the summer the waterbus is very crowded with tourists.
2 I live in the suburbs of Kuala Lumpur in Malaysia. Every morning I have to travel into the city centre where I work. A few years ago the journey took over two hours because the traffic was very bad. But now we have a monorail metro. It's very fast and comfortable and I can read the newspaper or a book. Unfortunately, I don't live near the metro station, so I have to get a bus to the station. The journey only takes about an hour and a quarter now, so I don't have to get up very early.
3 I live and work in New York – in Manhattan – and I usually cycle to work. It's fast and it's good exercise, too. The journey takes about half an hour. I wear shorts or sweatpants and a sweatshirt and I have to take my clothes in a bag. Then I have a shower when I get to work. Problems? I can't cycle in winter, so I have to take the subway then, but that takes about forty-five minutes. Car drivers are the biggest problem. They open doors in front of you and things like that. So you have to be very careful.

64.3

1 Assistant Hello. Can I help you?
Customer Yes, I bought this jumper at the weekend, but it's got a hole in it.
Assistant Oh, yes. I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
Customer Yes, please.
Assistant Just a moment. Here you are. This one's OK.
Assistant Thank you.
2 Assistant Hello. Can I help you?
Customer Yes, I bought this kettle two days ago, but there's something wrong with it.
Assistant I see. What's the problem?
Customer It's leaking.
Assistant Oh? I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
Customer No, thank you. Can I have a refund, please?
Assistant Yes, of course. Have you got the receipt?
Customer Yes. Here you are.
Assistant Thank you.
3 Assistant Hello. Can I help you?
Customer Yes, I bought this clock radio on Monday, but it's damaged. Look.
Assistant Oh, yes. I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
Customer Yes, please.
Assistant Just a moment. ... I'm sorry that was the last one. We should have some more next week.
Customer Oh, well can I have a refund then, please?
Assistant OK. Have you got the receipt?
Customer Yes. Here you are.
Assistant Thank you.
4 Assistant Hello. Can I help you?
Customer Yes, I bought this CD yesterday, but it's scratched.
Assistant I see. Would you like to exchange it?
Customer Yes, please.
Assistant Have you got the receipt?
Customer Yes. Here you are.
Assistant Just a moment, then, please Here you are. This one should be OK.
Customer Thank you.

Audio scripts

65.3

- Reporter** I'm at the recycling centre, and I'm talking to Arthur Collins. What materials can people recycle here?
Arthur We recycle a lot of materials – glass, paper, plastic, metal. We collect wood, too, and cardboard.
Reporter I see. What things do most people bring to the recycling centre?
Arthur Most people recycle newspapers and magazines, glass bottles – and plastic bottles, too.
Reporter I can see some metal cans over there.
Arthur Yes, people bring cans – and cardboard boxes, too.
Reporter Are those things easy to recycle?
Arthur Yes, they are. The biggest problem is with things like televisions and computers, because they're made of a lot of different materials – plastic, glass, rubber, metal. Some of the metals are very expensive, like silver and gold.
Reporter I see. So what do you ...

66.2

The model in this picture was built one sixth of normal size. I can't show you the model, because it was destroyed for a TV programme. It was made from wood and paper. The buildings and streets were built first. Then the small things were added. Children's toys were used for things like bicycles and plants. Shop signs were painted by hand. These small things are very important. When the model was seen on TV, people thought it was real. The street was used in a history programme. It was shown on TV last year.

67.1

- 1 I'm from Thailand. My favourite festival is Loy Krathong. It's celebrated at the end of the rainy season. It's to say thank you for the water. Small boats are made from banana leaves. A candle, flowers, and coins are put in the boat. In the evening, people take their boats to the nearest river, canal, or lake. The candles are lit and the boats are pushed out onto the water. It looks really beautiful. We believe that our bad luck is taken away by the boats, so we feel happy.
- 2 The Day of the Dead is one of the biggest festivals in Mexico. It's celebrated on the second of November every year. It's when dead friends and relatives are remembered. Big models of skeletons are made from paper, wood, and cardboard. These skeletons are carried through the streets. Small skeletons are eaten, too – but these are made from sugar and bread. They're sold in shops and markets. In their houses, people have flowers, candles, food, and photographs of their dead friends and relatives. We remember the good times with them.
- 3 My favourite festival here in Russia is Maslenitsa. It's celebrated at the end of winter. Winters are very long and cold in Russia, so we're all happy when it finishes. For the festival a model of a woman is made from straw. It's dressed in women's clothes. This is Lady Maslenitsa. There are lots of parties and people visit their relatives. And – this is the best part for the children – they eat lots of pancakes. They're delicious. At the end of the week, Lady Maslenitsa is burnt and we say goodbye to winter.

69.3

- A** Right, what's open on your desktop at the moment?
B It's a file.
A Well, save that.
B OK. I've saved it.
A What program are you using?
B Word.
A OK. Quit that.
B Right. I've done that.
A Good. Now can you see the icon for your email?
B Yes, I can.
A Fine. Click on it.
B OK. I've done that.
A Is your email window open now?
B Yes. It's the inbox.
A All right. Now scroll down to the email with the attachment and click on it.
B OK. The email is open now.
A Right. Now go to the menu bar and click on Edit. You should see the menu ...
B Well, I've done all that.
A Good. Now click OK and restart your computer. It should be fine.

72.2

- 1 **Katrin** John, I need something for my hairdryer. What do you call the thing that you put in the wall?
John A plug.
Katrin A plug?
John Yes. Do you want a plug for your hairdryer?
Katrin No, it's got a plug, but it's isn't the plug that you use here in England.
John Oh, I see. You need an adaptor.
Katrin An adaptor. Yes. Have you got an adaptor for this plug?
John No. I'm sorry. But why don't you use Sally's hairdryer and we can get an adaptor tomorrow.
Katrin Oh, OK.
- 2 **Katrin** This is a photo of my brother.
Sally What does your brother do?
Katrin Oh ... what do you call someone who builds things?
Sally Do you mean someone who builds houses? A builder?
Katrin No. He builds offices, bridges, and things like that.
Sally Oh, he's a civil engineer.
Katrin Sorry?
Sally A civil engineer. It's two words: Civil. That's C-I-V-I-L, and then the next word – engineer.
Katrin Oh, right, a civil engineer.
- 3 **Katrin** What do you call the part where you type on a computer?
John The keyboard. The things that you press are the 'keys', so the whole thing is a keyboard.
Katrin How do you spell that?
John K-E-Y-B-O-A-R-D.
Katrin Keyboard. OK.

73.3

- 1 **A** Hello, Mike.
B Oh, hi, Mary. Come in. Please sit down.
- 2 **A** Why are you putting on your jacket?
B I'm going out.
- 3 **A** Is that your neighbours' dog?
B Yes, I always took after it when they go away.
- 4 **A** Have you switched off your mobile?
B I'm looking for it now. I can't find it.
- 5 **A** Can you stand up, please? I can't find my keys.
B Just a minute. I'll switch on the light. There they are.

74.2

- 1 **A** How long have you worked here?
B I've been here for nearly three years.
- 2 **A** How long have you been a policeman?
B I've been in the police since 2003.
- 3 **A** How long were you and Jim married?
B Only three years.
- 4 **A** Have we lived in France for three years or four years?
B We've been here for three years.
- 5 **A** Did you work at the bank for a long time?
B I worked there for eight years.

Audio scripts

75.1

Paul Helen, it's good to see you.
Helen Yes, and you, Paul. How are you?
Paul Great, thanks. And you?
Helen Fine. Are you married?
Paul Yes, I've been married for nine years and we've got three children.
Helen Oh, lovely. What do you do? Didn't you get a job at a bank after university?
Paul Yes, I'm still there, but I'm a manager now.
Helen Where do you live?
Paul In Manchester. We've been there for three years. We've got a nice house in the suburbs and Georgina – that's my wife – teaches at a local school. What about you?
Helen Oh, well, when I left university, I got a job with an insurance company, but I didn't like it, so I was only there for six months.
Paul What did you do?
Helen I travelled to Australia, south-east Asia, and Canada.
Paul Great! What did you do there?
Helen I worked on farms, in hotels, in shops – and I met my husband! His name was Troy and he played the trumpet in a band.
Paul Wow. Cool.
Helen Yes, I was a singer with the band for a couple of years. It was fun but then I wanted to do the normal thing – get a real job, buy a house, have children. But Troy didn't.
Paul So, what happened?
Helen We got divorced and I came back to England. I've been back for four years now. I work for a computer company.
Paul In London?
Helen Yes. I share a flat with a friend there. I always wanted to travel and play the guitar in a band.
Helen Yes, but you've got a good job, a nice house, a family. You've got all the things that I've always wanted.
Paul But you've done all the things that I wanted to do. That's life, eh?

75.2

1 A I've got an interview tomorrow.
B Are you worried?
A Yes, I am.
2 A Oh, no!
B What's the matter?
A I'm annoyed. My laptop isn't working.
3 A Yawn!
B Are you tired?
A Yes, I am.
B Have you had a busy day?
A No, I was at a party last night.
4 A I'm going to get a pizza. I'm hungry. I didn't have any lunch.
5 A There's nothing on TV. I'm really bored.
6 A Our son has won a school prize.
B That's great. I bet you feel proud.
A Yes, I do.
7 B Hi, Mark. How are you?
A I'm fine. I had a day off today. I feel really relaxed.
8 A Just a minute. When's the meeting – this week or next? ... I'm confused!

31.2

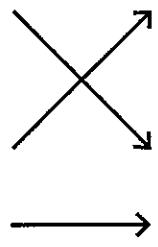
Sarah It's true, Ryan. Russell didn't know anything about Anna and Starlight Properties.
Ryan Anna and what? I'm talking about the car. He didn't put any petrol in it.
Cindy Yes, the car just stopped in the middle of the road. It was very embarrassing.
Ryan And when we finally got to the solicitor's, they were closed. You stupid boy!
Peter Closed? So you didn't sign the contract?
Cindy No, we didn't.
Jordan You haven't sold the café?
Ryan No, we haven't. And it's all Russell's fault.
Lucy Oh, that's great! It's wonderful news!
Cindy Wonderful? What are you talking about, Lucy?
Peter Sit down. We'll tell you all about it.

Voice Later ...
Jordan So, that's it.
Ryan That's amazing. Thank you very much. You've saved The Coffee Shop.
Sarah Well Russell helped, too. You didn't get to the solicitor's because he didn't put any petrol in the car.
Cindy Oh, yes. You clever boy, Russell. Well done.
Russell Thanks, Mum.
Ryan Oh, I don't believe it!

Irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past participle	Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bet	bet	bet	meet	met	met
bite	bit	bitten	pay	paid	paid
blow	blew	blown	put	put	put
break	broke	broken	quit	quit	quit
bring	brought	brought	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
build	built	built	ride	rode	ridden
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	ring	rang	rung
buy	bought	bought	run	ran	run
can	could/was able to	been able to	say	said	said
catch	caught	caught	see	saw	seen
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
dig	dug	dug	show	showed	shown
do	did	done	shrink	shrank	shrunk
draw	drew	drawn	shut	shut	shut
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung
drive	drove	driven	sit	sat	sat
eat	ate	eaten	sleep	slept	slept
fall	fell	fallen	smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought	fought	spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent
fly	flew	flown	stand	stood	stood
forget	forgot	forgotten	steal	stole	stolen
get	got	got	stick	stuck	stuck
give	gave	given	sweep	swept	swept
go	went	been/gone	swim	swam	swum
grow	grew	grown	swing	swung	swung
have	had	had	take	took	taken
hear	heard	heard	teach	taught	taught
hide	hid	hidden	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
hurt	hurt	hurt	understand	understood	understood
keep	kept	kept	wake	woke	woken
know	knew	known	wear	wore	worn
lead /li:d/	led	led	win	won	won
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	write	wrote	written
leave	left	left			

Pronunciation chart

iː	I	ʊ	uː	ɪə	ei	ɪ	
/sɪ/	/sɪt/	/pʊt/	/tuː/	/nɪə/	/deɪ/		
see	sit	put	too	near	day		
e	ə	ɜː	ɔː	ʊə	ɪə	əʊ	
/bed/	/əbəut/	/tɜːn/	/sɔː/	/pjʊə/	/bɔɪ/		
bed	about	turn	saw	pure	boy		
æ	ʌ	ɑː	ɒ	eə	aɪ	aʊ	
/kæt/	/ʌp/	/fɑːðə/	/hɒt/	/ðeə/	/maɪ/		
cat	up	father	hot	there	my		
p	b	t	d	tʃ	dʒ	k	g
/pen/	/bæd/	/tiː/	/dɔː/	/tʃeə/	/dʒæm/	/kæn/	/get/
pen	bad	tea	door	chair	jam	can	get
f	v	θ	ð	s	z	ʃ	ʒ
/faɪv/	/væn/	/θɪn/	/ðə/	/sɪt/	/zuː/	/ʃuː/	/juːʒəli/
five	van	thin	the	sit	zoo	shoe	usually
m	n	ŋ	h	l	r	w	j
/mæn/	/nɒt/	/sɪŋ/	/hæt/	/leg/	/red/	/wet/	/jes/
man	not	sing	hat	leg	red	wet	yes

